Doctoral Thesis

Rumer
A programming language and modular verification technique based on relationships

Author(s):
Balzer, Stephanie

Publication Date:
2011

Permanent Link:
https://doi.org/10.3929/ethz-a-007086593

Rights / License:
In Copyright - Non-Commercial Use Permitted

This page was generated automatically upon download from the ETH Zurich Research Collection. For more information please consult the Terms of use.
RUMER: A PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE AND MODULAR VERIFICATION TECHNIQUE BASED ON RELATIONSHIPS

A dissertation submitted to
ETH Zurich

for the degree of
Doctor of Sciences

presented by
Stephanie Balzer

accepted on the recommendation of
Prof. Dr. Thomas R. Gross, examiner
Prof. Dr. Sophia Drossopoulou, co-examiner
Prof. Dr. Peter Müller, co-examiner
Dr. Alexander J. Summers, co-examiner

2011
Abstract

The idea of asserting a program’s correctness by a mathematical proof rather than exhausitive testing has persisted in software system development. The notion of an invariant to capture the constant properties of data plays a central role in such program verification attempts. Invariants have also infiltrated object-oriented programming languages and have become a foundation for verifying object-oriented programs.

Current invariant-based, object-oriented verification techniques provide modular verification of single-object invariants. However, as soon as an invariant relates several objects, modular reasoning about the invariant is not possible without imposing certain restrictions on the program. Current solutions to the verification of such multi-objects invariants either restrict aliasing in a program or expand the visibility of an invariant beyond the boundary of the declaring class.

This thesis represents a two-part approach to program verification based on invariants. We develop a programming language, Rumer, that provides higher-level abstractions to capture not only objects but also the relationships between them. In addition, we elaborate a visible-state verification technique for Rumer that facilitates the modular verification of Rumer programs.

The Rumer programming language employs the abstraction of a relationship as a key architectural element in building a software system. Rather than employing references in objects to represent the relationships between objects, those relationships are represented explicitly by a relationship instance. This indirection gives rise to a stratified programming model. Based on this model, we formulate the Matryoshka Principle, a modularization discipline that provides strong encapsulation for Rumer types.

The verification technique is based on the Matryoshka Principle and leverages the particular features of the Rumer programming and specification language. The Matryoshka Principle provides modular reasoning about state changes and permits the adoption of a visible-state semantics for invariants. The Rumer programming and specification language encompasses techniques to encapsulate multi-object invariants in relationships and includes a rich assertion language that is based on discrete mathematics.
Zusammenfassung


Gängige invariantenbasierte, objektorientierte Verifikationstechniken erlauben die modulare Verifikation von Invarianten, die sich auf ein einzelnes Objekt beziehen. Setzt eine Invariante jedoch mehrere Objekte zueinander in Beziehung, ist modulares Schliessen nur mittels Einschränkungen des Programms möglich. Gängige Lösungsansätze für die Verifikation solcher Multi-Objekt-Invarianten unterbinden entweder das Aliasing (d.h. die Existenz unterschiedlicher Referenzen auf denselben Speicherplatz) oder weiten die Sichtbarkeit einer Invariante über die Grenzen der deklarierenden Klasse hinaus aus.


Die Verifikationstechnik basiert auf dem Matrjoschka-Prinzip und nutzt die spezifischen Eigenschaften der Programmiersprache Rumer und deren Spezifikationssprache aus. Das Matrjoschka-Prinzip ermöglicht das modulare Schliessen über Zustandswechsel und garantiert, dass Invarianten in sichtbaren Programmzuständen gelten. Die Programmierspra-
che Rumer und deren Spezifikationssprache bieten Techniken zur Kapselung von Multi-Objekt-Invarianten in Beziehungen und unterstützen eine reiche, auf diskreter Mathematik beruhende Aussagensprache.
Acknowledgments

I am grateful to the following persons who have accompanied my journey to a PhD:

My advisor Thomas Gross. His patience, allowing me to explore and substantiate my research ideas, and his scientific curiosity towards new, maybe even unconventional, research ideas are unparalleled. But above all, he has guided me to become, I believe, an independent researcher.

My co-examiners Sophia Drossopoulou, Peter Müller, and Alex Summers. I am grateful for their valuable feedback, allowing me to improve this thesis importantly. Sophia’s thought-provoking questions on the occasion of my visit have decisively influenced the last revision of the Rumer language. The discussions with Alex on visible-state verification techniques have deepened my understanding thereof, and I am very appreciative of Alex’s meticulous reading of this thesis, allowing me to greatly polish it.

The researchers I was fortunate to get to know at ETH. I am grateful to: Jean-Raymond Abrial for introducing me to formal methods and for his support of my PhD work; Laurent Voisin for his assistance in formal methods and for sharing his enormous knowledge; Patrick Eugster for his belief in first-class relationships and for pushing me to “go for my ideas”. Also, I would like to thank Bertrand Meyer for providing me a start at ETH.

My colleagues at ETH. In particular, I want to thank Susanne Cech Previtali for sharing my passion in the search for the right abstraction, her advice, and sisterhood. Also, I want to thank my colleagues of the LST research group Christoph Angerer, Mihai Cuibus, Nicu Fruja, Zoltán Majó, Nicholas Matsakis, Valery Naumov, Albert Noll, Mathias Payer, Michael Pradel, Florian Schneider, Yang Su, Luca Della Toffola, Oliver Trachsel, Cristian Tudeu, and Faheem Ullah for stimulating discussions, both on and off research topics. Furthermore, I want to thank Karine Arnout, Arnaud Bailly, Ilinca Ciupa, Werner Dietl, Lisa Ling Liu, Piotr Nienaltowski, Joseph Ruskiewicz, Silvia Santini, Bernd Schoeller, Sebastien Vaucouleur, and Christoph Wintersteiger for their support and friendship.

The students whose projects I was privileged to supervise: Christoph Băni, Alexandra Burns, Reto Conconi, Roland Schilter, Ágnes Sebestyén-Pál, Shinji Takasaka, Michelle Volery, and Andrea Zimmermann.

My parents and my sister Charlotte. I am grateful for their love and encouragement.

My partner Adnan. Without his love and unconditional support this work would not have been possible.
# Contents

1 Introduction 1  
1.1 Thesis .......................................................... 3  
1.2 Content and contribution .................................... 3  

2 Relationships 7  
2.1 OO relationships .................................................. 7  
  2.1.1 Running example ........................................... 8  
  2.1.2 Relationship features .................................... 9  
  2.1.3 Programming idioms ...................................... 9  
2.2 Empirical study ................................................... 15  
  2.2.1 Analysis corpus ........................................... 15  
  2.2.2 Metrics ..................................................... 15  
  2.2.3 Results ..................................................... 21  
  2.2.4 Analysis ................................................... 25  
2.3 First-class relationships ....................................... 29  
  2.3.1 Deficiencies of OO relationships ......................... 30  
  2.3.2 Toward first-class relationships ......................... 32  
2.4 Related work .................................................... 34  

3 Rumer: a relationship-based programming language 39  
3.1 Rationale .......................................................... 39  
3.2 Language concepts ............................................... 42  
  3.2.1 Entities and relationships ................................. 42  
  3.2.2 Elements and extents .................................... 44  
  3.2.3 Predicate references .................................... 49  
  3.2.4 Member interposition ................................... 51  
  3.2.5 Specification language ................................... 55  
3.3 Type system ........................................................ 59  
  3.3.1 Types ....................................................... 59  
  3.3.2 Subtyping .................................................. 63
7.1 Addressed challenges ........................................................................ 185
  7.1.1 University example ................................................................. 185
  7.1.2 Composite pattern ................................................................. 193
  7.1.3 Synchronized clocks .............................................................. 200

7.2 Future work .................................................................................. 204
  7.2.1 Language development ......................................................... 204
  7.2.2 Program verification .............................................................. 206

8 Conclusion ....................................................................................... 209

A Appendix .......................................................................................... 211
  A.1 Rumer grammar ....................................................................... 211

Bibliography ......................................................................................... 217
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Running example: university</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>DBU programming idiom</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>DBB programming idiom</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>IIE programming idiom</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>IPE programming idiom</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>ITE programming idiom</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>Empirical study metrics</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>Lower and upper bound of relationship-specific code</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>Deficiencies of OO relationships I</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.14</td>
<td>Deficiencies of OO relationships II</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>University example with first-class relationships</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>OO program heap</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Relationship-based program heap</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>University example in Rumer</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Running example: Composite pattern</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Composite pattern in Rumer</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Rumer element instances</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>Rumer extent instantiation (based on Composite pattern heap)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>Member interposition: declaration (based on university example code)</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>Member interposition: semantics I (based on university example heap)</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.10</td>
<td>Member interposition: semantics II (based on university example heap)</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.11</td>
<td>Invariants of Composite pattern</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.12</td>
<td>Rumer language types</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.13</td>
<td>Rumer subtyping relation</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.15</td>
<td>Mold initializers (based on university example code)</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.1 Matryoshka Principle stratification (based on Composite pattern heap) . . . 78
5.1 Parameters of unified framework for visible-state verification techniques . 90
5.2 General pattern for $\forall$ and $\exists$ ................................. 92
5.3 Malign versus benign relationships .................................. 95
6.1 Selective ownership for Composite pattern ......................... 140
6.2 Selective ownership: internal modifiers ............................. 144
6.3 Selective ownership modifier ordering ............................... 145
6.4 Special rule cases for selective-ownership-aware subtyping relation . . 145
7.1 University example: invariants of Student ......................... 186
7.2 University example: invariants of Teaches ......................... 187
7.3 University example: invariants of Attends ......................... 189
7.4 University example: invariants of University ..................... 190
7.5 University example: method specifications of Course and Assists ... 192
7.6 Composite pattern: object-oriented implementation ................. 193
7.7 Composite pattern: complete Rumer specification I ............... 195
7.8 Composite pattern: complete Rumer specification II ............... 196
7.9 Composite pattern: alternative specification ....................... 199
7.10 Synchronized clocks example: object-oriented implementation ....... 201
7.11 Synchronized clocks example: Rumer specification I ............... 202
## List of Tables

2.2 Relationship features ................................................. 10
2.8 Empirical study corpus .............................................. 16
2.11 Empirical study results I ........................................... 22
2.12 Empirical study results I ........................................... 24
3.14 Entity mold constructor ............................................. 66
3.16 Relationship mold constructor ...................................... 67
3.17 Entity addition operator ........................................... 68
3.18 Relationship addition operator ..................................... 69
3.19 Entity extent constructor ........................................... 71
3.20 Relationship extent constructor .................................... 71
3.21 Entity removal operator ............................................ 72
3.22 Relationship removal operator ..................................... 73
4.2 Rumer locations ....................................................... 79
4.3 Matryoshka Principle: admissible writes (U) ..................... 80
4.4 Matryoshka Principle: admissible invariants (D) ............... 82
4.5 Matryoshka Principle: admissible invocations (C) ............... 85
5.4 Relationship kinds ................................................... 96
5.5 X, V, B, and E for application actions ............................ 97
5.6 X, V, B, and E for default extent constructors .................. 98
5.7 X, V, B, and E for extent constructors ............................ 99
5.8 X, V, B, and E for extent methods ................................ 100
5.9 X, V, B, and E for entity and free, non-interposed relationship element methods .............................................. 101
5.10 X-adjunct for unilaterally benign, non-interposed relationship element methods ........................................ 101
5.11 V-adjunct and E-adjunct for unilaterally malign, non-interposed relationship element methods ........................................ 102
5.12 X, V, B, and E for interposed relationship element methods .............. 102
5.13 X, V, B, and E for entity and non-interposed relationship mold constructors and initializers ........................................ 103

6.5 Selective ownership viewpoint adaptation ........................................ 145
6.6 Selective-ownership-illegal field types ........................................ 147
6.7 Matryoshka Principle\textsuperscript{Plus}: admissible invocations (C) .................. 148
6.8 Selective-ownership-illegal query types ........................................ 149
6.9 Matryoshka Principle\textsuperscript{Plus}: admissible invariants (D) .................. 164
6.10 Owned locations ........................................ 165
6.11 Verification Technique\textsuperscript{Plus}: X, V, B, and E for default extent constructors 166
6.12 Verification Technique\textsuperscript{Plus}: X, V, B, and E for extent constructors ........ 166
6.13 Verification Technique\textsuperscript{Plus}: X, V, B, and E for extent methods ........ 167
6.14 Verification Technique\textsuperscript{Plus}: X, V, B, and E for entity and benign, non-interposed relationship element methods ........ 167
6.15 Verification Technique\textsuperscript{Plus}: X-adjunct for unilaterally benign, non-interposed relationship element methods ........ 167
6.16 Verification Technique\textsuperscript{Plus}: V-adjunct and E-adjunct for unilaterally malign, non-interposed relationship element methods ........ 168
6.17 Verification Technique\textsuperscript{Plus}: X, V, B, and E for interposed relationship element methods ........................................ 168
6.18 Verification Technique\textsuperscript{Plus}: X, V, B, and E for entity and non-interposed relationship mold constructors and initializers ........ 168
This thesis explores the value of first-class relationships for program verification.

**First-class relationships in object-oriented languages.** Object-oriented programming languages have become mainstream in today’s software systems development. The abstraction of a *class* has proved viable to represent the artifacts of a software system, and advanced concepts, such as inheritance and polymorphism, allow for adequate extensibility and flexibility of the resulting object-oriented code. While the abstraction of a class allows for an accurate expression of a software system’s artifacts, it falls short of expressing the *relationships* that exist between the individual artifacts. During the design of an object-oriented software system, the identification of the relationships that exist between the classes of the system is equally important to the identification of the classes themselves. Conceptual modeling languages account for this fact and provide useful abstractions that allow the expression of both the classes and the relationships between the classes. However, once the system is implemented in an object-oriented programming language, relationships are represented in terms of classes and reference fields, and the abstraction of a relationship disappears from the resulting object-oriented code.

Implementing relationships in terms of the primitives of an object-oriented programming language is disadvantageous: besides disconnecting the implementation of a software system from its design, it results in code that compromises information hiding and is prone to error. As a result, it has been suggested to grant relationships *first-class citizenship* in object-oriented programming languages [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]. Programming languages with first-class relationships complement object-oriented programming languages with the abstraction of a relationship to capture the relationships between classes. Like classes, relationships can declare fields and methods, they can be instantiated, and their instances can be stored in variables or bound to method arguments and returns. Relationship-based implementations turn out to be more “lightweight” than their object-oriented counterparts. Most importantly, however, they restore modular reasoning about the relationships between the classes of a software system since relationship-based programming languages provide a separate abstraction to encapsulate relationships.
Object-oriented verification. Since the seminal works on program correctness [7, 8, 9], the idea of asserting a program’s correctness by a mathematical proof rather than by exhaustive testing has persisted in software development. Program verification has also been studied in the context of object-oriented programming languages. A wealth of object-oriented verification techniques [10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19] has been suggested that adopt the idea of an invariant [20] as a foundation for verifying object-oriented programs [21]. An object invariant captures the properties of an object that the object exhibits in its consistent states.

A key issue for any practical object-oriented verification technique is the ability to modularly verify a program so that modules (i.e., classes) can be verified independently from each other. Modular verification is straightforward as long as an object invariant only constrains the state of the current object and as long as an object’s fields can only be written to by the object’s own methods. Unfortunately, single-object invariants rarely express the constraints of real-world software, which typically asks for multi-object invariants. A multi-object invariant relates several objects and constrains not only the state of the current object but also the state(s) of the object(s) it refers to. The reasoning about a multi-object invariant, however, is no longer naturally modular to the current object. If aliases to the referenced objects exist, then those objects can be altered by the aliases and the multi-object invariant compromised without the current object noticing.

Multi-object invariants compromise also the adoption of a visible-state semantics for invariants. A visible-state verification technique [16] requires an object to meet its invariant in the initial and final states of method executions (i.e., the visible states) but allows an object to temporarily break its invariant during the execution of a method. A visible-state semantics cannot generally be applied soundly to multi-object invariants. To re-establish a multi-object invariant by its final state, a method may need to invoke methods on the objects related by the invariant, and those methods may in turn re-enter (i.e., “call-back” into) the original object in an inconsistent state.

Existing techniques [10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19] for verifying multi-object invariants differ in how they address the challenges mentioned above as well as in the range of verification problems they can handle. Whereas some techniques [10, 11, 12, 16, 18, 19] rely on a visible-state semantics for invariants and address the problems of multi-object invariants and re-entrant method invocations by leveraging ownership types or by enlarging or refining an invariant’s scope of visibility, other techniques [13, 14, 15, 17] abandon a visible-state semantics for invariants and require programmers to indicate the program states in which invariants are expected to hold. Furthermore, a number of object-oriented verification techniques have been suggested that are not based on invariants, but leverage heap partitioning. To facilitate heap-local reasoning in the presence of aliasing, those works either introduce the ideas of separation logic [22] to Java [23, 24, 25, 26] or express heap disjointness assertions based on dynamic frames [27, 28, 29, 30].
1.1 Thesis

This thesis represents a combined effort to develop a relationship-based programming language as well as a modular, invariant-based verification technique for that language. Two observations initiated this work: (i) that relationship-based programming languages offer novel modularization possibilities and (ii) that in object-oriented verification an invariant’s granularity is at odds with a type declaration’s granularity since invariants may span across class boundaries. Based on these observations, this thesis hypothesizes that the challenges of invariant-based, object-oriented program verification can be addressed by reconciling the language used to implement object-oriented software with the language used to specify and verify object-oriented software.

This thesis contributes the relationship-based programming language Rumer as well as a modular, invariant-based verification technique for Rumer.

The design of the Rumer programming language was driven by the desire to grasp the genuine characteristics of first-class relationships and to leverage these characteristics both for program construction and program verification. These efforts resulted in a novel modularization discipline, the Matryoshka Principle, as well as in the support of new language mechanisms. The Matryoshka Principle requires programs to be composed from relationships, since relationships indicate how instances may refer to each other, and results in a stratification of a program’s relationship and class declarations. Admissibility criteria are then specified based on this stratification, providing strong encapsulation guarantees. The new language mechanisms encompass member interposition and predicate references. Member interposition allows appropriate encapsulation of those object properties that are dependent on the object’s participation in a relationship. Predicate references rely on Rumer’s side-effect free heap-querying support and denote predicates over the program heap.

The verification technique developed for the Rumer programming language restores a visible-state semantics for multi-object invariants and allows the modular verification of Rumer programs. It supports a rich range of assertions to be expressed and allows the declaration of both object invariants and relationship instance invariants, including invariants that quantify over several objects or relationship instances. The verification technique leverages the particular characteristics of the Rumer programming language. It relies on the Matryoshka Principle to be guaranteed that there are no transitive call-backs and on member interposition to modularly reason about shared state. In addition, the Rumer verification technique allows the Matryoshka Principle to be superimposed with selective ownership, a flexible form of ownership that facilitates the modular verification of invariants that constrain several relationships.

1.2 Content and contribution

We next provide an overview of the thesis’ content and detail its contributions.
Chapter 2. In this chapter, we provide a survey of how relationships are represented in terms of the primitives of an object-oriented programming language. We start with distilling a list of desired features for object-oriented relationship implementations and derive a set of programming idioms that categorize concrete object-oriented implementations of relationships. Then, we report on an empirical study on the occurrence of the programming idioms in a corpus of 24 real-world Java programs. We conclude the chapter with a discussion of the shortcomings of pure object-oriented relationship implementations as well as an introduction to first-class relationships and their related work.

Contributions: This chapter contributes an empirical study on the occurrence of object-oriented relationship implementations in Java programs and a discussion of the benefits of first-class support of relationships for software construction.

Chapter 3. In this chapter, we introduce the relationship-based programming language Rumer. We start with presenting the meta model underlying the Rumer language and then present the programming language itself, including the main language concepts, the specification language, the language’s type system and semantics. The language’s semantics give rise to a number of system invariants, upon which the verification technique relies. We delimit the differences between existing relationship-based languages and Rumer in-line with the presentation of the Rumer language.

Contributions: This chapter contributes a relationship-based programming language that incorporates the novel language mechanisms member interposition and predicate references.

Chapter 4. In this chapter, we present the Matryoshka Principle. We begin with introducing the stratification layers underlying the principle and then detail the admissibility criteria imposed by the principle. The Matryoshka Principle gives rise to a number of system invariants, which are essential to the verification technique.

Contributions: This chapter contributes the Matryoshka Principle, a modularization principle providing strong encapsulation guarantees for a program’s abstractions and prohibiting the occurrence of transitive call-backs.

Chapter 5. In this chapter, we develop a visible-state verification technique for the Rumer programming language. We first provide some background information about visible-state verification techniques and then present our verification technique and prove its soundness.

Contributions: This chapter contributes a visible-state verification technique for the Rumer language that leverages the Matryoshka Principle and member interposition.

Chapter 6. In this chapter, we extend the verification technique of the previous chapter with selective ownership. We first introduce selective ownership and then present the
extended verification technique and prove its soundness. We conclude the chapter with an overview of related work on object-oriented verification techniques.

**Contributions:** This chapter contributes a lightweight and flexible form of ownership that relies on the Matryoshka Principle for the prevention of transitive call-backs.

**Chapter 7.** In this chapter, we illustrate the Rumer visible-state verification technique based on a number of examples that constitute well-known specification and verification challenges for object-oriented program verification. We conclude with a discussion of future work.

**Contributions:** This chapter contributes an evaluation of the benefits of first-class support of relationships for program verification.

**Chapter 8.** This chapter concludes this thesis.
Relationships

Classes in object-oriented programs do not stand by themselves, but there exist numerous relationships between them. In this chapter, we discuss how programmers represent the relationships between classes in object-oriented programs (Section 2.1). We introduce a set of programming idioms that categorize possible implementations of relationships in object-oriented languages and present a survey on the occurrence of the programming idioms in real-world Java programs (Section 2.2). We then discuss known shortcomings of pure object-oriented implementations of relationships and demonstrate how programming languages with first-class support for relationships address those shortcomings (Section 2.3). We conclude the chapter with an overview of related work on first-class relationships (Section 2.4).

2.1 OO relationships

An important part in the design of an object-oriented system is the identification of the classes that make up the system. Equally important as the classes themselves are also the relationships that exist between the classes. Conceptual modeling languages, such as the Unified Modeling Language (UML) [31] or the Entity-Relationship (ER) model [32], account for this fact and provide useful abstractions that allow a system designer not only to express the classes but also the relationships between them. UML class diagrams support classes and associations to represent classes and their relationships, respectively. ER diagrams support entities and relationships to represent classes and their relationships, respectively.

To implement a system, programmers must map the abstractions of the conceptual model to the abstractions provided by the programming language. This mapping is straightforward for UML classes and ER entities as there is a direct correspondence between UML classes, or ER entities, and the classes of an object-oriented language. However, the mapping is less straightforward for UML associations and ER relationships since object-oriented languages lack a corresponding abstraction to capture the relationships between classes. As a result, programmers implement the relationships in terms of the primitives available in an object-oriented language. Relationships are most commonly implemented
by declaring reference fields in one of the related classes. Depending on the desired fea-
tures of the relationship implementation, the use of auxiliary classes may be necessary. For example, if enumeration of all related objects is required, an auxiliary class must be introduced that stores all related instances of the involved classes.

In this section, we first introduce a list of typically desired features for object-oriented implementations of relationships (Section 2.1.2) and then present a set of programming idioms that categorize concrete implementations of relationships in object-oriented languages (Section 2.1.3). For every programming idiom, we detail which features it supports. We illustrate the programming idioms based on a simple example (Section 2.1.1), which we introduce next.

2.1.1 Running example

We use the information system of a university as the running example of this chapter. Figure 2.1 shows the UML class diagram of the university system. The diagram consists of the classes Student, Course, and Faculty and the associations attends, assists, and teaches. Classes are represented by rectangles and associations as lines connecting the classes that the association relates. The diagram in Figure 2.1 indicates that students can attend as well as assist courses and that courses are taught by faculty members. Both classes and associations can declare attributes. The diagram in Figure 2.1 only displays an association attribute, but omits class attributes since they are not relevant for the current presentation. An association with an attribute is represented by an association class: a rectangle connected to the association by a dotted line. In Figure 2.1, attends is an association class and declares the association attribute grade. The attribute grade stores for each student and course pair the grade a particular student received for attending a particular course. The UML class diagram in Figure 2.1 declares also multiplicity constraints. Multiplicity constraints restrict the number of objects a particular object can be related to by an association. In the example, the multiplicities ‘*' and ‘1’ are used, indicating that an object can be associated with any number of objects of the class to which the object is related by the association or to at most one object of the class to which the object is related by the association, respectively.
2.1.2 Relationship features

In this section, we present a list of relationship features that object-oriented implementations of relationships exhibit. The features are dependent on the particular kind of relationship considered. In this thesis, we only consider static relationships between classes that result from reference field declarations. These are the relationships that can be expressed as first-class relationships in programming languages with first-class relationship support and that are, consequently, of primary interest to this thesis. We ignore any form of temporary connections between instances of classes that result from method arguments or method-local references. We elaborated the relationship features in earlier work [33, 34]. They are based on Chen’s entity relationship (ER) model [32, 35], but adapted to fit the object-oriented programming context. The relationship features are:

- **Degree**: Specifies the number of classes that a relationship relates.
- **Cardinality**: Prescribes, for all classes related by the relationship, the maximal number of instances with which an instance of the class can be related. As opposed to a UML multiplicity constraint, a cardinality constraint represents an upper bound rather than a precise number. For binary relationships, we distinguish 1:1, 1:m, and m:n cardinality constraints. For ternary relationships, we distinguish 1:1:1, 1:1:m, 1:m:n, and m:n:p cardinality constraints.
- **Relationship member**: Indicates whether a relationship implementation supports relationship members. A relationship member is a field or method that is associated with the relationship rather than with any of the individual classes that the relationship relates. A relationship field corresponds to a UML association attribute or an ER relationship attribute.
- **Extent**: Indicates whether a relationship implementation uses an auxiliary extent class which stores all instances of the related classes. An extent class is useful, for example, for enumerating all instances of the related classes.

The relationship features indicate that the degree of a relationship may be smaller than the number of actual classes occurring in a relationship implementation. We use different terminology to distinguish the classes that are actually related by the relationship, and that determine the degree of the relationship, from any auxiliary classes. We refer to the classes that a relationship relates as the relationship participants. On the other hand, we refer to the classes that occur in an object-oriented relationship implementation for supportive purpose only, but that are conceptually not part of the relationship, as auxiliary classes. Both participant classes and auxiliary classes build the constituent classes of a relationship implementation.

2.1.3 Programming idioms

In this section, we discuss the programming idioms. The programming idioms represent a categorization of concrete implementations of relationships in object-oriented languages. We derived the programming idioms in a multi-stage process [33, 34]: given the identified
relationship features (Section 2.1.2), we built a first set of possible programming idioms for implementing relationships. We then refined those idioms in an iterative process by inspecting their occurrence in larger object-oriented applications. We finally subjected the idioms to the external validation by Hans Wegener, a professional software developer, working at Swiss Re at the time.

Table 2.2 provides an overview of the programming idioms and indicates for each programming idiom the relationship features it supports. Full support of a feature is indicated by a ‘●’ symbol. A ‘○’ symbol indicates that a feature is not inherently supported by a programming idiom, but a programmer can manually support the feature by supplying additional methods that include appropriate checking code. A ‘□’ symbol indicates that a feature is unnatural to a programming idiom, but its support can technically be achieved. A ‘-’ symbol indicates that a feature cannot be supported by a programming idiom. Table 2.2 distinguishes different configurations of a programming idiom. The configuration of a programming idiom is determined by the type declaration of the idiom’s reference field(s). A reference field’s type imposes an upper bound on the number of objects that the reference field can refer to. Table 2.2 classifies a configuration as multi-valued if several objects can be referred to, and as single-valued if at most one object can be referred to. To determine the configuration of a programming idiom, we treat reference field declarations of an array type, collection type\(^1\), or map type as multi-valued reference fields and any remaining field declarations as single-valued reference fields.

The subsequent sections introduce the individual programming idioms and detail for each

\(^1\)In this chapter, we use the term collection to denote one-dimensional data structures, such as sets and lists.
idiom which features it supports. Although the programming idioms were primarily devised for the purpose of evaluating how relationships are encoded in object-oriented programs, the programming idioms can also be useful for other purposes. For example, they can serve as an implementation reference for programmers, instructing programmers how to implement UML associations in object-oriented programming languages. In this respect, the programming idioms are related to Noble’s relationships patterns [36] that consist of a set of design guidelines on how to represent the relationships between objects in object-oriented programming languages. On a broader scale, the programming idioms can also be regarded as kinds of design patterns [37], yet on a lower level of granularity.

**Direct Binary Unidirectional (DBU)**

Figure 2.3 depicts the UML class diagram of the *direct binary unidirectional (DBU)* programming idiom. This idiom represents a very straightforward implementation of a relationship: one of the two participant classes (A) declares a reference field (b) pointing to its partner participant class (B). The field can either be *single-valued* or *multi-valued*. In the case of a single-valued field, the type of the field is the type of the partner participant class (i.e., B). In the case of a multi-valued field, the type of the field is either an array with the partner participant class as an element type (i.e., B[]) or a collection with the partner participant class as an element type (i.e., Collection[B]). The choice of the field type determines the cardinality of the relationship. The cardinality of the relationship is *m:1* for single-valued reference field declarations and *m:n* for multi-valued reference field declarations. The cardinality is *m:1* for a single-valued reference field b since, even though an A object can reference at most one B object, the referenced B object can be referenced by several A objects. The cardinality is *m:n* for a multi-valued reference field b since an A object can reference several B objects that, in turn, can be referenced by several A objects. As indicated by Table 2.2, the DBU programming idiom cannot support other cardinalities, not even by supplying appropriate checking code. To enforce more restrictive cardinalities (e.g., *1:1* for single-valued reference fields), an auxiliary extent class would need to be introduced that provides access to all instances of the participant classes, allowing a programmer to check those instances’ compliance with the more restrictive cardinality constraint. Table 2.2 further indicates that the DBU idiom can support relationship members in the case of single-valued fields. Such a member must be declared at the many-side of the relationship (i.e., class A). This approach is most likely chosen in reality due to its practicability but unfortunately intermingles relationship members with participant members.

**Example:** Association teaches (Figure 2.1) can be implemented using the DBU idiom. To this end, a single-valued field of type Faculty is declared in class Course, making a course point to the faculty member teaching the course. This configuration of the DBU idiom guarantees that a course cannot be taught by several faculty members.
Direct Binary Bidirectional (DBB)

Figure 2.4 depicts the UML class diagram of the *direct binary bidirectional* (DBB) programming idiom. This idiom attempts to maintain the bidirectionality inherent to relationships by declaring reference fields at both sides of the relationship. In Figure 2.4, the participant class A declares a reference to the participant class B, and vice versa. The fields can either be *single-valued* or *multi-valued*. As opposed to the DBU idiom, the existence of a “back-reference” in the DBB programming idiom, allows the enforcement of more restrictive cardinality constraints (see Table 2.2). For example, in the case of two single-valued reference fields, programmers can establish appropriate checks to guarantee that a B object that is referenced by an A object actually refers back to the A object. If no code is supplied to enforce cardinality compliance, all configurations of the DBB idiom degenerate to variants of m:n relationships where m and n can range from one to the number of instances of the respective participant. In the case of 1:1 and 1:m relationships and provided that the bidirectionality is appropriately enforced, the DBB idiom can also support relationship members. As indicated by Table 2.2, the declaration of relationship members in participant classes is not advisable since it results in intermingling participant members and relationship members.

**Example:** Association teaches (Figure 2.1) can alternatively be implemented using the DBB idiom. To this end, a single-valued field of type Faculty is declared in class Course and a multi-valued field with the element type Course (e.g., LinkedList<Course>) in class Faculty. The code assigning to those reference fields must include appropriate checks to guarantee that the Course objects referenced by a Faculty object refer back to the Faculty object.

Indirect Indexed Extent (IIE)

Figure 2.5 depicts the UML class diagram of the *indirect indexed extent* (IIE) programming idiom. As opposed to the direct programming idioms DBU and DBB, this idiom
introduces a further indirection and uses an auxiliary class IndexedExtent in addition to the participant classes A and B. The extent class IndexedExtent stores all instances of the participant classes A and B. As opposed to the direct programming idioms DBU and DBB, the IIE idiom does not declare reference fields in the participant classes, but declares an index field in the extent class to relate the instances of the participant classes to each other. In a Java setting, the index is typically a descendant of Map and allows the retrieval of all values that are associated with a key. In Figure 2.5, map keys are single-valued and of type A and map values can either be single-valued or multi-valued and are of type B and Collection<B>, respectively. The cardinality of the relationship is 1:m for single-valued map values and m:n for multi-valued map values. Thanks to the existence of an extent class, more restrictive cardinality constraints than the inherent ones can be enforced.

Example: Association assists (Figure 2.1) can be implemented using the IIE idiom. To this end, an auxiliary class Assists is declared that represents the extent of the programming idiom. The extent class Assists declares an index field of type Map with a single-valued map key type Student and a multi-valued map value type with the element type Course (e.g., LinkedList<Course>).

Indirect Pair Extent (IPE)

Figure 2.6 depicts the UML class diagram of the indirect pair extent (IPE) programming idiom. The IPE programming idiom employs two auxiliary classes: an extent class Extent and a class Pair. Class Pair declares two single-valued reference fields a and b, referring to instances of the participant classes A and B, respectively. Conceptually, the auxiliary class Pair is a direct representative of the actual relationship. The extent class Extent stores all instances of class Pair in the multi-valued reference field pair. The inherent cardinality of the programming idiom is m:n, but thanks to the existence of an extent class more restrictive cardinality constraints can be enforced. Furthermore, the existence of class Pair, facilitates true support for relationship members. By declaring relationship members in class Pair, relationship members are associated with the referenced participant pair instances and distinguishable from participant members.

Example: Association attends (Figure 2.1) can be implemented using the IPE idiom. To this end, the auxiliary classes Attends and StudentCoursePair are declared that represent...
the extent class and pair class of the programming idiom, respectively. The pair class 
StudentCoursePair declares single-valued reference fields of type Student and Course 
and the extent class Attends declares a multi-valued reference field with the element type 
StudentCoursePair (e.g., HashSet<StudentCoursePair>). Furthermore, the pair class 
StudentCoursePair declares the relationship attribute grade.

**Indirect Triple Extent (ITE)**

Figure 2.7 depicts the UML class diagram of the indirect triple extent (ITE) programming 
idiom, a generalization of the IPE idiom that supports ternary relationships. Like the IPE 
programming idiom, it introduces an auxiliary extent class Extent and represents the ac-
tual relationship explicitly by the auxiliary class Triple. Analogously, the inherent card-
nality of the programming idiom is m:n:p, but more restrictive cardinality constraints can 
be enforced as well as relationship members declared.
2.2 Empirical study

To assess the prevalence of relationships in object-oriented programs, we conducted an empirical study on the occurrence of the programming idioms of Section 2.1.3 in today’s object-oriented applications. The study is based on an analysis tool, the Relationship Detector for Java (RelDJ), that identifies occurrences of the programming idioms in Java code. The tool performs a static, fully automatic bytecode analysis and was implemented by Burns in her master’s thesis [34]. Using the tool, we analyzed a corpus of 24 Java programs, ranging from the SPEC JVM98 [38] and the SPEC JBB2005 [39] benchmarks to open source Java projects, comprising up to thousands of classes and covering as diverse domains as compilers, games, and application servers.

In this section, we first introduce the corpus of Java applications that we analyzed in this study (Section 2.2.1). Then, we explain the underlying metrics of the study (Section 2.2.2) and present the empirical results (Section 2.2.3). We conclude by providing details on the analysis (Section 2.2.4).

2.2.1 Analysis corpus

Table 2.8 provides details on the analysis corpus of the empirical study. The analysis corpus consists of a total of 24 Java applications. It ranges from the SPEC JVM98 [38]2 and the SPEC JBB2005 [39] benchmarks to open source Java projects, comprising up to thousands of classes, and covers applications of various domains (e.g., application servers, graphical email clients, speech synthesizers, games, etc.). Additionally, the corpus comprises an in-house application that is a compiler for a subset of Java used as part of the compiler design lecture at ETH.

2.2.2 Metrics

We use several metrics to quantify the empirical results. An important concern in the choice of the metrics is to sustain validity of the empirical results. In particular, we took care not to introduce any bias. For example, to guarantee that the collected measurements are representative for a particular application, we excluded Java library classes from the analysis. This procedure is common practice [40, 41] since different Java applications typically share a considerable portion of library imports and, thus, a considerable portion of code. As a result, the empirical study only reports on relationships between application classes but not on any relationships between application classes and Java library classes.

We distinguish basic metrics from aggregate metrics. Aggregate metrics are computed from basic metrics. In addition, we use corrective metrics to account for possible imprecision of the basic metrics and to provide bounds on the range of realistic values. We

---

2We exclude the jvm_mtrt SPEC JVM98 benchmark from the analysis since the benchmark only consists of two classes, one of which is the main class.
Table 2.8: Analysis corpus consisting of 24 Java applications. Version: version number of analyzed application. Classes: total number of class files. Bundle: indicates whether sources or binaries were used. Origin: origin of application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classes</th>
<th>Bundle</th>
<th>Origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>azureus</td>
<td>3.0.5.0</td>
<td>BitTorrent client</td>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columba</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Graphical email client</td>
<td>1702</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compiler</td>
<td>SS07</td>
<td>Compiler design sample solution</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>ETH internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>findbugs</td>
<td>1.3.2</td>
<td>Program to find bugs in Java code</td>
<td>1577</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freetts</td>
<td>1.2.1</td>
<td>Speech synthesizer</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gruntspud</td>
<td>0.4.6 beta</td>
<td>Graphical CVS client</td>
<td>746</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jasperreports</td>
<td>2.0.4</td>
<td>Reporting tool</td>
<td>1209</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>JasperForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jbidwatcher</td>
<td>1.02.2</td>
<td>Auction site tracking tool</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jboss</td>
<td>4.2.2 GA</td>
<td>JBoss applications server</td>
<td>6275</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jedit</td>
<td>4.3 pre13</td>
<td>Text editor</td>
<td>1008</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jgraph</td>
<td>5.12.0.1</td>
<td>Graph visualization component</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jhotdraw</td>
<td>6.0.1</td>
<td>Graphics framework for drawing editors</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jtopen</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Toolbox for client/server programming</td>
<td>3600</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_compress</td>
<td>JVM98</td>
<td>Modified Lempel-Ziv method</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SPEC JVM98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_db</td>
<td>JVM98</td>
<td>Memory resident database</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SPEC JVM98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_jack</td>
<td>JVM98</td>
<td>Parser generator</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SPEC JVM98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_javac</td>
<td>JVM98</td>
<td>Java Compiler</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SPEC JVM98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_jess</td>
<td>JVM98</td>
<td>Java expert shell system</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SPEC JVM98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_mpgeaudio</td>
<td>JVM98</td>
<td>Audio file decompression</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SPEC JVM98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_raytrace</td>
<td>JVM98</td>
<td>Raytracer</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SPEC JVM98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lectcomm</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>ETH lecture communicator</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>megamek</td>
<td>0.32.2</td>
<td>Battletech board game</td>
<td>876</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pmd</td>
<td>4.2rc1</td>
<td>Java program analyzer</td>
<td>924</td>
<td>Sources</td>
<td>SourceForge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spec_jbb</td>
<td>JBB05</td>
<td>Three-tier client/server system</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>Binaries</td>
<td>SPEC JBB2005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 2.9: Synthetic example application to illustrate the metrics used for the empirical study. Left: UML class diagram of example application. Right: concrete measurements for example application.

introduce the metrics in the following subsections. We illustrate the metrics on the “synthetic” example application displayed in Figure 2.9. The figure shows the UML class diagram of the example application on the left, revealing the basic class structure of the application, and displays some measurements for the example application on the right.
Basic metrics

We distinguish the following basic metrics:

Total number of application classes (\#classes). The total number of class files that constitute the analyzed application. As detailed previously, this metric excludes any Java library classes.

Example: The example application of Figure 2.9 consists of 10 classes, namely the classes A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, and J. Since the class Lib is a Java library class, it is not considered for the analysis and not included in \#classes.

Total number of programming idioms (\#idioms). The total number of identified programming idioms. This metric reveals the number of relationships that exist between the application classes of the analyzed Java application.

Example: There are 5 occurrences of programming idioms in the example application of Figure 2.9. There are 3 instances of the DBU idiom (A-B, C-B, and D-E), 1 instance of the DBB idiom (H-I), and 1 instance of the IPE idiom (A-D, G-H). Again, library classes are ignored and, therefore, the relationship between the library class Lib and the application class A is not reported as an instance of the DBU programming idiom.

Total number of constituent classes (\#constituents). The total number of application classes that are constituent classes of at least one programming idiom. A constituent class can either be a participant class or an auxiliary class of the programming idiom. Subclasses of constituent classes are not considered to be constituent classes.

Example: In the example application of Figure 2.9, 8 out of the overall 10 application classes are constituent classes of programming idioms. These are the classes A, B, C, D, E, G, H, and I. The remaining application classes F and J are not constituent classes. Class J may be a “driver” class, declaring the main method and maintaining temporary references to other classes only. Class F, on the other hand, is not considered to be a constituent class even though it is a subclass of the constituent class C.

Total number of lines of bytecode (LOBC). The total number of lines of bytecode of the analyzed application class files. The number includes: class signatures, method signatures, field declarations, and the bytecode instructions of method and constructor bodies.
LinkedList<B> myBList;

3
void addB(B b) {
4         doBookkeeping();
5         myBList.add(b);
6     }
7
8 B getB(B b) {
9         int i;
10         i = myBList.indexOf(b);
11         doBookkeeping();
12         return myBList.remove(i);
13     }
14
15 void doBookkeeping() {...}

Figure 2.10: Illustration of computation of lower and upper bound of relationship-specific code.

Relationship-specific portion of LOBC (R-LOBC). The portion of the total number of lines of bytecode that is specific to the implementation of a programming idiom and, thus, relationship-specific. It is not possible to provide a precise measurement of that metric without the guidance of a human expert. A fully automated tool, such as RelDJ, can only identify those instructions that are directly related to the programming idiom implementation (i.e., declaration of reference fields and access to reference fields), but will miss any auxiliary instructions that are indirectly related. To provide a more realistic measure of the number of relationship-specific lines of bytecode, we use two metrics, the R-LOBC lower bound (%lower) and the R-LOBC upper bound (%upper). Those metrics indicate the bandwidth of the number of relationship-specific lines of bytecode. Whereas the lower bound only comprises reference field declarations and read and write instructions to those reference fields, the upper bound additionally comprises any residual instructions that occur in the method bodies where the read and write instructions happen. The actual number of relationship-specific lines of bytecode for an application lies in between its lower and upper bound. Both the lower and upper bound represent two extremes of the same measure as they are an underestimation and overestimation, respectively. A manual investigation of some of the small applications of the analysis corpus actually reveals that the lower bound is too conservative a metric and suggests the upper bound to be a more appropriate estimate of the actual number of relationship-specific lines of bytecode.

Example: We illustrate the two metrics based on the code shown in Figure 2.10 that comprises the member declarations of the class C of Figure 2.9. For simplicity, we use source code in the example, but the explanations apply analogously to bytecode. The R-LOBC lower bound metric comprises 4 instructions, namely the declaration of the reference field myBList on line 1 and the method invocations on the list object referenced by that field on line 5, line 10, and line 12. The R-LOBC upper bound metric, on the other hand, additionally considers the remaining instructions of the methods addB() and getB(), and comprises 7 instructions in total.
2.2 Empirical Study

Aggregate metrics

This section introduces the aggregate metrics that are computed from the atomic metrics presented previously.

**Percentage of non-constituent classes (\%islands).** The number of application classes that are not constituent classes of any programming idioms as a percentage of the total number of application classes. Equation 2.1 indicates how to compute this metric using the atomic metrics \#classes and \#constituents defined in Section 2.2.2.

\[
\frac{\#\text{classes} - \#\text{constituents}}{\#\text{classes}}
\]  

(2.1)

**Example:** In the example application of Figure 2.9, 8 out of the overall 10 application classes are constituent classes of programming idioms. Thus, 2 out of the 10 application classes are not constituent classes, yielding the value \(\frac{10 - 8}{10} = 20\%\), according to Equation 2.1.

**Average involvement (\textit{avgInvolvement}).** Average number of programming idioms of which an application class is a constituent. Equation 2.2 indicates how to compute this metric. The formula computes the weighted sum of the number of times classes are constituent classes of programming idioms. The subscript \(n\) enumerates the number of programming idioms of which an application class is a constituent class. The numerator of the fraction, \(\#\text{classesInvolvedInNIdioms}_n\), denotes the number of application classes that are constituent classes of the subscripted-number of programming idioms. The denominator of the fraction, \#classes, denotes the total number of application classes, as defined in Section 2.2.2.

\[
\sum_n \frac{\#\text{classesInvolvedInNIdioms}_n}{\#\text{classes}} \times n
\]  

(2.2)

**Example:** In the example application of Figure 2.9, 2 application classes (i.e., F and J) are not constituent classes of any programming idioms, 4 applications classes (i.e., C, E, G, and I) are constituent classes of 1 programming idiom, and 4 applications classes (i.e., A, B, D, and H) are constituent classes of 2 programming idioms. Thus, for the example application, the metric has the following value: \(\frac{2}{10} \times 0 + \frac{4}{10} \times 1 + \frac{4}{10} \times 2 = 1.2\).

**Average number of constituent classes (\textit{avgConstituents}).** Average number of constituent classes of all the identified programming idioms. Equation 2.3 indicates how to compute this metric. The formula computes the ratio between the cumulative number of constituent classes of the identified programming idioms and the total number of identified programming idioms. The subscript \textit{idiom} enumerates the possible programming
idioms. Expression \( \#\text{occurrences}_{\text{idiom}} \) denotes the number of occurrences of a particular programming idiom in the analyzed application and expression \( \#\text{constituents}_{\text{idiom}} \) indicates the number of constituent classes of the particular programming idiom. The denominator of the fraction, \( \#\text{idioms} \), denotes the total number of identified programming idioms, as defined in Section 2.2.2.

\[
\sum_{\text{idiom}} \#\text{occurrences}_{\text{idiom}} \ast \#\text{constituents}_{\text{idiom}} \quad \#\text{idioms}
\]

(2.3)

**Example:** In the example application of Figure 2.9, there 3 occurrences of the DBU programming idiom, 1 occurrence of the DBB programming idiom, and 1 occurrence of the IPE programming idiom. Thus, for the example application, the metric has the following value: \( \frac{3+2+1+2+1+1}{5} = 2.4 \).

**Corrective metrics**

Unfortunately, it is not always possible to identify the classes that are constituent classes of programming idioms. The following factors complicate the identification of constituent classes: (i) the use of non-generic (i.e., raw) collections or maps and (ii) the occurrence of generic types that are not instantiated. In case (i), RelDJ employs a data-flow analysis to infer the actual element type(s) of the collection or map (see also Section 2.2.4). If the type inference succeeds, then the constituent class(es) of the programming idiom can be identified and unified with the corresponding application class(es). Otherwise, the constituent class(es) of the programming idiom cannot be identified and, consequently, not be unified with any application class(es). In case (ii), the constituent class(es) of the programming idiom can neither be identified nor unified with any application class(es).

Application classes that cannot be unified with constituent classes of programming idioms are not included in the \( \#\text{constituents} \) metric. As a result, the reported values for \( \#\text{constituents} \) are generally too low. We can use the number of unidentified constituent classes as an upper bound to give a more accurate value for the \( \#\text{constituents} \) metric. We compute two metrics for that purpose:

**Total number of unidentified constituent classes (\#unknowns).** The total number of constituent classes of programming idioms that cannot be identified and that, consequently, cannot be unified with existing application classes. This number can serve as an upper bound on the actual number of constituent classes: the actual number of constituent classes can be larger than the reported value \( \#\text{constituents} \) by at most the value of \#unknowns. The maximal value of \( \#\text{constituents} + \#\text{unknowns} \) is reached if each unidentified constituent class traces back to a different application class. On the other hand, if all unidentified constituent classes trace back to the same application class or, if there are no unidentified constituent classes, then the number of actual constituent classes is
2.2 EMPIRICAL STUDY

The number of actual constituent classes thus lies between \( \#\text{constituents} \) and \( \#\text{constituents} + \#\text{unknowns} \). For instance, in Figure 2.9, if the classes B and E were not identified, then the value of \( \#\text{constituents} \) would be 6 (i.e., the classes A, C, D, G, H, and I) and the value of \( \#\text{unknowns} \) would be 3. The actual number of constituent classes in this example is 8, which is in-between 6 and 9 (i.e., \( 9 = 6 + 3 \)).

**Percentage of unidentified constituent classes (\( \%\text{unknowns} \)).** The number of unidentified constituent classes as a percentage of the total number of application classes. Equation 2.4 indicates how to compute this metric.

\[
\frac{\#\text{unknowns}}{\#\text{classes}}
\]

(2.4)

2.2.3 Results

In this section, we discuss the results of our empirical study. We report on the overall frequency of relationships of the analysis corpus, on the occurrence of their different kinds of implementations, and on the portion of code consumed by relationship implementations.

**Relationship frequency**

Table 2.11 lists the number of identified programming idioms (column \( \#\text{idioms} \)) per application of the analysis corpus. Since a programming idiom represents a concrete object-oriented implementation of a relationship, the number of identified programming idioms stands for the number of relationships existing in an application. Given the fact that each idiom consists of at least 2 classes, Table 2.11 reveals that some classes must be part of several relationships. Column \( \text{avgInvolvement} \) in Table 2.11 indicates the average number of programming idioms of which a class is a constituent class. The data are computed using Equation 2.2 introduced in Section 2.2.2. For some applications (e.g., jgraph, lectcomm, and spec_jbb), classes are involved in roughly 2.2 relationships on average. Although the average relationship involvement is less pronounced for other applications (e.g., jvm_jess and jvm_db with an average involvement of 0.6 and 0.8, resp.), the overall involvement for the analysis corpus amounts to 1.5 on average.

The average relationship involvement of a class varies from one class to another. Some classes are part of numerous relationships (up to 70) at a time and others are not part of a single relationship at all. Column \( \%\text{islands} \) in Table 2.11 lists the number of application classes that are not constituent classes of any relationships as a percentage of the total number of application classes. The data are computed using Equation 2.1 introduced in Section 2.2.2. This number roughly correlates with the average involvement: the more island classes exist, the lower the average involvement turns out. As discussed in Section 2.2.2, the number of unidentified constituent classes establishes an upper bound on
Table 2.11: Empirical results. #classes: total number of application classes (see Section 2.2.2). #idioms: total number of identified programming idioms (see Section 2.2.2). avgInvolvement: average number of programming idioms of which an application class is a constituent (see Equation 2.2). #constituents: total number of application classes that are constituent classes of at least one programming idiom (see Section 2.2.2). %islands: number of application classes that are not constituent classes as a percentage of total number of application classes (see Equation 2.1). %unknowns: number of unidentified constituent classes as a percentage of total number of application classes (see Equation 2.4).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>#classes</th>
<th>#idioms</th>
<th>avgInvolvement</th>
<th>#constituents</th>
<th>%islands</th>
<th>%unknowns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>azureus</td>
<td>1905</td>
<td>1729</td>
<td>1.88</td>
<td>1648</td>
<td>13 %</td>
<td>25 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columba</td>
<td>1702</td>
<td>1295</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>1182</td>
<td>31 %</td>
<td>13 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compiler</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>47 %</td>
<td>7 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>findbugs</td>
<td>1577</td>
<td>1166</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>1151</td>
<td>27 %</td>
<td>14 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freets</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>39 %</td>
<td>14 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gruntspud</td>
<td>746</td>
<td>764</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>725</td>
<td>3 %</td>
<td>15 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jasperreports</td>
<td>1209</td>
<td>847</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>755</td>
<td>38 %</td>
<td>13 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jbidwatcher</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>30 %</td>
<td>13 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jboss</td>
<td>6275</td>
<td>4840</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>4228</td>
<td>33 %</td>
<td>17 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jedit</td>
<td>1008</td>
<td>888</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>827</td>
<td>18 %</td>
<td>14 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jgraph</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>1 %</td>
<td>28 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jhotdraw</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>447</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>12 %</td>
<td>7 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jtopen</td>
<td>3600</td>
<td>3222</td>
<td>1.58</td>
<td>2452</td>
<td>32 %</td>
<td>17 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_compress</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>31 %</td>
<td>15 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_db</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50 %</td>
<td>25 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_jack</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37 %</td>
<td>25 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_javac</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>44 %</td>
<td>27 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_jess</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>75 %</td>
<td>7 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_mpegaudio</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>21 %</td>
<td>9 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_raytrace</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>12 %</td>
<td>12 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lectcomm</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>2.17</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>0 %</td>
<td>12 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>megamek</td>
<td>876</td>
<td>858</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>692</td>
<td>21 %</td>
<td>24 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pmd</td>
<td>924</td>
<td>371</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>391</td>
<td>58 %</td>
<td>9 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spec_jbb</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>20 %</td>
<td>19 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>920</td>
<td>735</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>655</td>
<td>29 %</td>
<td>16 %</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

the actual number of constituent classes and, thus, a lower bound on the number of island classes. Column %unknowns in Table 2.11 indicates the number of unidentified constituent classes as a percentage of the total number of application classes. For the applications jvm_javac, jvm_jack, jasper_reports, and compiler, for instance, the relatively high percentage of unidentified constituent classes suggests that a substantial portion of the classes that appear to be non-constituent classes actually are constituent classes of programming idioms. A manual investigation of the applications jboss and jvm_jess, which also exhibit a pronounced occurrence of island classes, reveals that the dominance of island classes results from a pronounced use of temporary relationships and from a deep inheritance structure, respectively. The application jvm_db, finally, only consists of 4 classes. One of the two island classes declares the main method and maintains temporary references to the instances of the other classes.
### Relationship implementations

Table 2.12 indicates the frequency distribution of the individual programming idioms. Columns $%DBU - %ITE$ indicate for each idiom the number of its occurrences as a percentage of the total number of identified programming idioms. The measurements show that the DBU programming idiom is by far the most frequently used idiom to implement relationships: 78% of all discovered programming idioms of the analysis corpus are of this type. Considering the extra amount of declarations and boilerplate code necessary to set up any of the other programming idioms, this result is not surprising. The second most frequently used programming idiom of the analysis corpus is the IPE idiom: 11% of all discovered programming idioms of the analysis corpus are of this type. Although the IPE idiom requires the programmer to set up and maintain 2 auxiliary classes apart from the participant classes, it is the binary programming idiom that supports most of the relationship features (see Table 2.2). The IPE idiom seems to be the programming idiom of choice whenever more functionality is required. The third most frequently used programming idioms are the IIE idiom and the ITE idiom. The occurrences of those idioms amount each to 5% of all discovered programming idioms of the analysis corpus. The most uncommon programming idiom of the analysis corpus is the DBB idiom (1%).

Column $avgConstituents$ in Table 2.12 summarizes these results by indicating the average number of constituent classes of all identified programming idioms. The data are computed using Equation 2.3 introduced in Section 2.2.2. The results show that a relationship is implemented on average with 2.41 constituent classes.

### Relationship-specific code

The code necessary to implement relationships in class-based object-oriented programs represents a noticeable portion of a program. This code subsumes declarations of reference fields and corresponding setter and getter methods and, in the case of indirect programming idioms, the declaration of auxiliary classes. In addition to providing the code for the setup of a relationship, programmers must also provide the code necessary to preserve the consistency of a relationship. For instance, if support for bidirectionality is required and the DBB programming idiom is chosen, invocations of setter methods on either side of the relationship must be coordinated. Otherwise, the bidirectionality of the programming idiom, which is inherent to a relationship, is easily destroyed.

Column $LOBC$ in Table 2.12 lists the total number of lines of bytecode for every application of the analysis corpus. Column $%lower$ and $%upper$ indicate the lower and upper bound, respectively, of the relationship-specific portion of lines of bytecode (see Section 2.2.2) as a percentage of the total number of lines of bytecode. The portion of code that is relationship-specific tends to increase with the occurrence of more complex programming idioms (i.e., DBB, IIE, IPE, and ITE) as well as with the average involvement of classes in relationships (column $avgInvolvement$ in Table 2.11). For instance, the portion of relationship-specific code for azureus is considerable since the appli-
Table 2.12: Empirical results. %DBU, %DBB, %IIE, %IPE, %ITE: number of identified occurrences of respective programming idiom as a percentage of total number of identified programming idioms (see Section 2.2.2). avgConstituents: average number of constituent classes of all identified programming idioms (see Equation 2.3). LOBC: total number of lines of bytecode of analyzed application class files (see Section 2.2.2). %lower: lower bound of number of relationship-specific lines of bytecode as a percentage of total number of lines of bytecode (see Section 2.2.2). %upper: upper bound of number of relationship-specific lines of bytecode as a percentage of total number of lines of bytecode (see Section 2.2.2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>%DBU</th>
<th>%DBB</th>
<th>%IIE</th>
<th>%IPE</th>
<th>%ITE</th>
<th>avgConstituents</th>
<th>LOBC</th>
<th>%lower</th>
<th>%upper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>azureus</td>
<td>72%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2.55</td>
<td>374627</td>
<td>22%</td>
<td>59%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columba</td>
<td>84%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>237132</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>56%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compiler</td>
<td>77%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>32776</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>24%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>findbugs</td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2.47</td>
<td>312090</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>51%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freets</td>
<td>79%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>2.46</td>
<td>44991</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>41%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gruntpud</td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2.38</td>
<td>144105</td>
<td>27%</td>
<td>63%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jasperreports</td>
<td>76%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.38</td>
<td>290135</td>
<td>21%</td>
<td>47%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jbidwatcher</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>140164</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>32%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jboss</td>
<td>79%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.36</td>
<td>1423590</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>55%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jedit</td>
<td>82%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>69756</td>
<td>21%</td>
<td>54%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jgraph</td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2.49</td>
<td>43371</td>
<td>21%</td>
<td>52%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jhotdraw</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>87788</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>31%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jtopen</td>
<td>81%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>1413736</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>51%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_compress</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>1911</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>32%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_db</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1686</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>48%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_jack</td>
<td>79%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>19895</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>31%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_javac</td>
<td>65%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>2.68</td>
<td>46126</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_jess</td>
<td>71%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>2.36</td>
<td>21255</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_mpegaudio</td>
<td>82%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>35026</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jvm_raytrace</td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2.48</td>
<td>7054</td>
<td>19%</td>
<td>55%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lectcomm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>2.23</td>
<td>35519</td>
<td>28%</td>
<td>61%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>megamek</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>2.36</td>
<td>525996</td>
<td>21%</td>
<td>60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pmd</td>
<td>77%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>2.36</td>
<td>195886</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>37%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spec_jbb</td>
<td>78%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2.48</td>
<td>46191</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>43%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>78%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2.41</td>
<td>239617</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>45%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

portion exhibits a relatively pronounced occurrence of more complex programming idioms (i.e., IPE and ITE) as well as a relationship involvement above average. The portion of relationship-specific code for jvm_compress, on the other hand, is below average. This result is surprising considering the relatively pronounced occurrence of complex programming idioms but is due to the poor relationship involvement of the jvm_compress classes. The occurrence of unidentified constituent classes (column %unknowns in Table 2.11) also has an adverse affect on the portion of relationship-specific code. For instance, the portion of relationship-specific code for jvm_compress is surprisingly low considering the relatively pronounced occurrence of the IPE and ITE programming idioms. This result is due to the occurrence of unidentified constituent classes. The average portion of relationship-specific code for the analysis corpus lies between 17% (lower bound) and 45% (upper bound) of the total number of lines of bytecode.
2.2.4 Analysis

In this section, we provide further details on the analysis tool used for executing the empirical study and give an overview of related code analysis approaches.

RelDJ

The code analysis tool for executing this empirical study is the Relationship Detector for Java (RelDJ). RelDJ performs a static, fully automatic analysis of Java applications to detect occurrences of the programming idioms introduced in Section 2.1.3 and to collect measurements for the metrics defined in Section 2.2.2. RelDJ was implemented by Burns in her master’s thesis [34]. It relies on the ASM Java bytecode manipulation framework [42] and performs a bytecode analysis.

Identification of programming idioms. The programming idioms introduced in Section 2.1.3 are recognizable by a tool since the individual idioms differ in implementation specificity. The differences are due to the disposition of reference field declarations in classes. To identify occurrences of the programming idioms in a Java application, RelDJ examines all reference field declarations in the application classes. Overall, RelDJ executes three passes over the input class files. In the first pass, RelDJ collects metadata about the program, such as the classes and their inheritance structure. In the second pass (see Algorithm 1), RelDJ analyzes each class separately and produces a preliminary identification of the programming idioms based on the local information available per class. In the third pass (see Algorithm 2), RelDJ completes the identification of the programming idioms and refines some of the identification decisions taken during the preliminary phase. For the identification of programming idioms, RelDJ treats nested classes (static nested classes and inner classes) and top-level classes alike but ignores the implicit “back-references” of inner classes to their enclosing classes.

Algorithm 1 details how RelDJ achieves a preliminary identification of programming idioms. The algorithm considers each class file in turn and maintains a set of variables to categorize the reference field declarations of a class. The variable singleValuedFields comprises the set of all single-valued reference field declarations of a class. The variables nonMapMultiValuedFields comprises the set of all multi-valued reference field declarations of a class that are not of a map type. The variables mapMultiValuedFields comprises the set of all multi-valued reference field declarations of a class that are of a map type. These variables are initialized for a particular class on lines 6 to 18. The algorithm excludes library classes from the analysis (see Section 2.2.2) and introduces a corresponding check on line 7. On lines 19 to 46 the algorithm achieves a preliminary identification of the ITE, IPE, IIE, and DBU programming idioms. The IIE programming idiom can be easily identified due to its declaration of a map field in constituent class IndexedExtent (see lines 20 to 23). The IPE and ITE programming idioms can be identified due to the declaration of single-valued reference fields in the Pair and Triple constituent classes, re-
Procedure PreIdentification(In classes, Out idioms):
1: idioms ← { } /* Identified idioms */
2: for all class files c ∈ classes do
3: singleValuedFields ← { } /* Relevant single-valued reference fields */
4: nonMapMultiValuedFields ← { } /* Relevant multi-valued reference fields not of type map */
5: mapMultiValuedFields ← { } /* Relevant multi-valued reference fields of type map */
6: for all fields f ∈ c do
7: if isOfApplicationType(f) then
8: if isSingleValued(f) then /* Check if f is a single-valued field */
9: singleValuedFields ← singleValuedFields ∪ f
10: end if
11: if isNonMapMultiValued(f) then /* Check if f is a non-map multi-valued field */
12: nonMapMultiValuedFields ← nonMapMultiValuedFields ∪ f
13: end if
14: if isMapMultiValued(f) then /* Check if f is a map multi-valued field */
15: mapMultiValuedFields ← mapMultiValuedFields ∪ f
16: end if
17: end if
18: end for
19: /* Indirect indexed extent (IIE) */
20: for all fields f1 ∈ mapMultiValuedFields do
21: iie ← initializeIIE(f1)
22: idioms ← idioms ∪ iie
23: end for
24: for all methods m ∈ c do
25: /* Indirect triple extent (ITE) */
26: for all fields f1, f2, f3 ∈ singleValuedFields do
27: if isAssignedIn(f1, f2, f3, m) then /* Check if f1, f2, f3 are assigned in m */
28: ite ← initializeITE(f1, f2, f3)
29: idioms ← idioms ∪ ite
30: singleValuedFields ← singleValuedFields \ {f1, f2, f3}
31: end if
32: end for
33: /* Indirect pair extent (IPE) */
34: for all fields f1, f2 ∈ singleValuedFields do
35: if isAssignedIn(f1, f2, m) then /* Check if f1 and f2 are assigned in m */
36: ipe ← initializeIPE(f1, f2)
37: idioms ← idioms ∪ ipe
38: singleValuedFields ← singleValuedFields \ {f1, f2}
39: end if
40: end for
41: end for
42: /* Direct binary unidirectional (DBU) */
43: for all fields f1 ∈ singleValuedFields ∪ nonMapMultiValuedFields do
44: dbu ← initializeDBU(f1)
45: idioms ← idioms ∪ dbu
46: end for
47: end for

Algorithm 1: Algorithm for preliminary identification of programming idioms. This algorithm produces the input to Algorithm 2 and is invoked by Algorithm 2.
Procedure FinalIdentification(In classes):
  1: idioms ← { }
  2: PrelIdentification(classes, idioms)
  3: for all idioms i1 ∈ idioms do
  4: /* Check if i1 is a DBU idiom */
  5: if instanceOf(i1, DBU) then
  6: /* Direct binary bidirectional (DBB) */
  7: for all idioms i2 ∈ idioms \ {i1} do
  8: /* Check if i2 is a DBU idiom and if B instance of i1 is A instance of i2 and vice versa */
  9: if instanceOf(i2, DBU) and i1.B = i2.A and i2.B = i1.A then
 10: ddb ← initializeDBB()
 11: idioms ← idioms \ {i1, i2}
 12: end if
 13: end for
 14: /* Indirect pair extent (IPE) */
 15: for all idioms i2 ∈ idioms \ {i1} do
 16: /* Check if i2 is an IPE idiom and if B instance of i1 is Pair instance of i2 */
 17: if instanceOf(i2, IPE) and i1.B = i2.Pair then
 18: updateIPE(i2, i1)
 19: idioms ← idioms \ {i1}
 20: end if
 21: end for
 22: /* Indirect triple extent (ITE) */
 23: for all idioms i2 ∈ idioms \ {i1} do
 24: /* Check if i2 is an ITE idiom and if B instance of i1 is Triple instance of i2 */
 25: if instanceOf(i2, ITE) and i1.B = i2.Triple then
 26: updateITE(i2, i1)
 27: idioms ← idioms \ {i1}
 28: end if
 29: end for
 30: end if
 31: end if
 32: end for

Algorithm 2: Algorithm for final identification of programming idioms. This algorithm invokes Algorithm 1 to obtain a preliminary identification of programming idioms.

spectively. To distinguish an IPE programming idiom from an ITE programming idiom, assignments to the reference fields are tracked. Based on the assumption that the participant classes of a programming idiom are set up atomically, the algorithm inspects how many single-valued reference fields are assigned within a single method. If a method assigns to exactly three single-valued reference fields, the declaring class is categorized as a Triple constituent class of the ITE programming idiom (see lines 26 to 32). On the other hand, if a method assigns to exactly two single-valued reference fields, the declaring class is categorized as a Pair constituent class of the IPE programming idiom (see lines 34 to 40). The declaring classes of any residual single-valued reference fields as well as of any non-map multi-valued reference fields are finally categorized as constituent classes of DBU programming idioms (see lines 43 to 46).

The identification of programming idioms achieved by Algorithm 1 is preliminary since it does not cover the DBB programming idiom nor does it identify the Extent constituent
classes of the IPE and ITE programming idiom. In the set of programming idioms returned by Algorithm 1, an instance of the DBB programming idiom appears as two separate instances of the DBU programming idiom and instances of the IPE and ITE programming idiom appear as two separate instances of the IPE and ITE programming idiom, respectively, and one instance of the DBU programming idiom. For instance, for the example application displayed in Figure 2.9, Algorithm 1 would return the following programming idioms: 6 instances of the DBU programming idiom (A-B, C-B, A-D, D-E, H-I, and I-J) and 1 instance of the IPE programming idiom (D-G-H). Algorithm 2 refines the set of programming idioms returned by Algorithm 1 and identifies occurrences of the DBB programming idiom as well as the Extent constituent classes of the IPE and ITE programming idiom. It reconsiders each instance of a DBU programming idiom and tries to find a matching instance of a DBU programming idiom (see lines 7 to 14) or a matching instance of an IPE programming idiom (see lines 16 to 22), or a matching instance of an ITE programming idiom (see lines 24 to 30).

**Element type inference.** RelDJ employs an elementary data-flow analysis to infer the element type(s) of any raw collections or maps. As discussed in Section 2.2.2, this type inference is vital to identify the constituent classes of a programming idiom in case reference field declarations are of a collection or map type. The main idea of the analysis is similar to the one employed for the reverse engineering of UML associations [40, 41]: RelDJ monitors method invocations on raw collections or maps and deduces the element type(s) from any information provided as part of the invocation. For instance, the retrieval of an element type from a collection is typically accompanied by a cast instruction, revealing the actual element type. When an element is added to a collection, on the other hand, the type of the provided argument indicates the actual element type. The respective retrieval and addition methods of the Java library classes that RelDJ must consider for the type inference must be included in a configuration file. As opposed to previous approaches [40, 41], RelDJ is capable of inferring the least common supertype when several invocations with different actual argument types happen on the same collection or map. For that purpose, RelDJ uses the collected metadata about the class inheritance structure. The implemented data-flow analysis is of course only successful if methods are invoked on the raw collections or maps. If no methods are invoked, the corresponding constituent classes of a programming idiom cannot be identified, and RelDJ reports unidentified constituent classes.

**Related approaches**

The analysis underlying the presented empirical study is related to static model extraction and more loosely related to dynamic model extraction.

**Static model extraction.** Static model extraction targets the reverse engineering of UML class diagrams from an application’s code. Whereas the reverse engineering of
UML class diagrams raises challenges similar to the ones of identifying programing idiomms, there are fundamental differences between the two approaches. Most notable is the difference in the relevance of implementation details. Whereas a reverse engineering tool suppresses any implementation details on the recovered associations, our analysis exposes how relationships are represented in class-based object-oriented code. As a result, our analysis relies upon a more diverse set of implementation variations of relationships (e.g., bidirectional idioms or idioms with more than two constituent classes) than the ones covered by reverse engineering tools.

Jackson et al. [40] describe a tool Womble that allows the extraction of object models from Java programs. Womble performs a static bytecode analysis to identify UML associations. Like RelDJ, Womble applies a data-flow analysis to deduce the element types of collections. Unlike Womble, however, RelDJ takes advantage of generic declarations. Matzko et al. [43] contribute a similar reverse engineering tool for C++ and provide a comparison of a set of tools targeting the same goal.

Guéhéneuc and Albin-Amiot [44] provide clarification on the implementation of UML associations with the aim to bridge the gap between the design and the implementation of an object-oriented system. The authors define a set of formal properties of associations and use these properties to distinguish different kinds of binary class relationships. The authors also describe a tool suite to detect binary class relationships in class-based object-oriented code. Unlike Guéhéneuc and Albin-Amiot, we exclude temporary associations (established through local variables and method parameters) from the analysis, but cover bidirectional relationships and relationships that involve more than two classes.

Milanova [41] introduces an approach for identifying UML compositions in Java programs. The approach is based on a static inference of object ownership and aims to verify the implementation of UML compositions. The distinction between UML compositions and UML aggregations is not relevant for our empirical study.

Dynamic model extraction. More loosely related to our analysis is the research on dynamic object model extraction. Mitchell [45] focuses on the identification of run-time structures of object-oriented programs to infer any adverse affect the structures may have on memory footprint. Flanagan et al. [46] present a dynamic approach to extract object models from legacy code.

2.3 First-class relationships

In this section, we first summarize the results of the empirical study and discuss the deficiencies of object-oriented implementations of relationships. Then, we introduce the main ideas of first-class relationships.
2.3.1 Deficiencies of OO relationships

The empirical study on the occurrence of the programming idioms in today’s Java applications reveals that relationships are an integral part of an application. On average, the number of relationships amounts to almost 80% of the number of classes, and the average number of relationships in which a class is involved amounts to 1.51. The study also provides evidence that relationships do not remain encapsulated in a single class. On average, 21% of all relationships distribute across at least 3 classes, with an average of 2.41 classes needed to implement a relationship. Lastly, the study demonstrates that a considerable portion of a program is concerned with the setup and maintenance of relationships. On average, between 17% (lower bound) and 45% (upper bound) of the total number of lines of bytecode is relationship-specific.

In the following, we discuss examples of object-oriented implementations of relationships and show that, especially for implementations supporting several relationship features (see Section 2.1.2), the resulting code (i) can be laborious, (ii) can compromise information hiding, and (iii) can be prone to error.

**OO relationships can be laborious.** Depending on the features that are desired for the relationship (see Section 2.1.2), programmers must declare auxiliary classes in addition to the actual participant classes of the relationship. For instance, Figure 2.13 sketches the implementation of relationship attends (Figure 2.1) based on the IPE idiom. The program declares the participant classes `Student` and `Course` as well as the auxiliary classes `StudentCoursePair` and `Attends`. The auxiliary class `StudentCoursePair` accommodates the relationship member `grade`, and the auxiliary class `Attends` facilitates the enumeration of all related `Student` and `Course` objects. The extent class `Attends` demonstrates that, in addition to the declaration of auxiliary classes, the declaration of auxiliary methods to set up and retrieve relationship participants is necessary. For instance, `Attends` declares methods to register and resign a student to (line 5) and from (line 6) a course and to set the grade that a student received for a course (line 7). Furthermore, `Attends` declares various methods (lines 10 to 12) to query the extent and to retrieve related `Student` and `Course` objects based on some search criteria. For instance, method `studentsAttendingCourse()` allows the retrieval of all students who attend the course passed as argument to the method. On the other hand, Method `studentsWithGradeForCourse()` allows the retrieval of all students who received the grade passed as argument for the attendance of the course passed as argument. For space concerns, Figure 2.13 does not show the implementations of the methods, but most of them involve iteration over the set `pairs` and the inspection of the current element to check whether it fits the selection criteria. Figure 2.13 exemplifies that object-oriented implementations of relationships can become quite involved and result in a considerable amount of boilerplate code. The writing (and maintenance) of the boilerplate code resulting from such implementations of more complex programming idioms is very laborious.
2.3 First-Class Relationships

```java
class Attends {
    private HashSet<StudentCoursePair> pairs;

    // set up
    public void registerStudentForCourse(Student s, Course c) {...}
    public void resignStudentFromCourse(Student s, Course c) {...}
    public void setGrade(Student s, Course c, int g) {...}

    // queries
    public List<Student> studentsAttendingCourse(Course c) {...}
    public List<Course> coursesAttendedByStudent(Student s) {...}
    public List<Student> studentsWithGradeForCourse(int g, Course c) {...}
}

class StudentCoursePair {
    private Student student;
    private Course course;
    private int grade;
    // getters and setters
}
class Student {...}
class Course {...}
```

Figure 2.13: Illustration of relationship-specific methods for participant set up and retrieval. The code sketches the object-oriented implementation of association attends (Figure 2.1) based on the IPE programming idiom.

**OO relationships can compromise information hiding.** The object-oriented implementation of the Attends relationship in Figure 2.13 demonstrates that not all constituent classes of a relationship implementation should be exposed to client code. In the case of the program in Figure 2.13, class Attends defines the interface through which clients should set up and query the Attends relationship. Class StudentCoursePair, in contrast, is only declared for implementation purposes and should not be accessed by any clients. Unfortunately, the current implementation does not prevent clients from accessing class StudentCoursePair. By distributing the relationship code across several classes, the relationship is no longer encapsulated in a single class, and information hiding is thus compromised.

**OO relationships can be prone to error.** Loss of information hiding affects code maintenance adversely. For instance, let’s assume for the running example that we impose the constraint that advanced courses can only be attended by graduate students and include appropriate checks in method registerStudentForCourse() (see Figure 2.13). As long as clients instantiate the Attends relationship using the methods declared by class Attends, the constraint is guaranteed to be preserved. However, as soon as clients instantiate the relationship directly by invoking the constructor of StudentCoursePair, the consistency of the relationship is endangered. The distribution of relationship code across several classes does not only compromise information hiding but also makes the relationship code prone to error. Figure 2.14 provides another example, illustrating the difficulties in preserving a relationship’s consistency.
class Yin {
    private Yang yang;

    public void setYang(Yang y) {
        this.yang = y;
        yang.setYin(this);
    }

    public Yang getYang() {
        return yang;
    }
}

class Yang {
    private Yin yin;

    // access: package-private
    void setYin(Yin y) {
        this.yin = y;
    }

    public Yin getYin() {
        return yin;
    }
}

Figure 2.14: Code example illustrating the challenges of preserving a relationship’s bidirectionality. The code is based on the DBB programming idiom.

It shows an instance of the DBB programming idiom that implements a bidirectional relationship between the classes Yin and Yang. As already noted by Rumbaugh [1], maintaining the bidirectionality of a relationship is intricate. In Figure 2.14, method setYang() attempts to preserve the bidirectionality of the relationship by updating the reference fields yang and yin simultaneously. Unfortunately, this precaution does still not guarantee that yin and yang objects mutually refer to each other. Direct invocations of method setYin() by any of the client classes residing in the same package as Yang, in particular, compromise the bidirectionality of the relationship. Limiting the access of method setYin() even further and changing its modifier from package-private to private does not alleviate the problem as it would prevent setYang()’s invocation of setYin(). Only a mechanism, such as friends in C++ to grant Yin write access to Yang’s fields, would prevent this kind of invalidation, but compromise encapsulation of the relationship participant Yang. But even if clients set up the relationship through invocations of setYang() only, the bidirectionality of the relationship is still at risk. Several invocations of setYang() on different receiver yin objects, but with the same argument yang object, in particular, would destroy the relationship’s bidirectionality. Only appropriate checks or method specifications that prevent updates of the fields yang and yin if the argument yang object’s yin field is null would prevent the invalidation.

2.3.2 Toward first-class relationships

Given the deficiencies of object-oriented implementations of relationships and the fact that relationships occur frequently in today’s object-oriented applications, it is no surprise that various researchers have suggested to add first-class support for relationships to object-oriented programming languages. We review the related work on first-class relationships in Section 2.4. In this section, we briefly outline the main ideas of first-class relationships based on the running example.

The basic idea of first-class relationships is to represent the relationships between the classes of an object-oriented system explicitly in a programming language. A programming language with first-class relationship support thus allows programmers to declare
2.3 First-Class Relationships

Both the classes of an object-oriented system and the relationships between them. Like classes, relationships are first-class citizens: they can declare their own fields and methods, they can be instantiated, and their instances can be stored in variables, passed as arguments to method invocations, and returned as results of method executions.

Figure 2.15 sketches the implementation of the running example (see Figure 2.1) in a programming language that supports first-class relationships. The pseudo code shown in Figure 2.15 combines features of various first-class relationship approaches. The program declares the classes Student, Course, and Faculty as well as the relationships Attends, Assists, and Teaches. Relationship declarations indicate the types of the instances they relate. For instance, relationship Attends declares that it relates instances of the classes Student and Course. In the example, only classes appear as participants of relationships. In principle, relationships can relate both classes and/or relationships. Relationship declarations can also restrict the cardinality of a relationship. The cardinality constraints declared in Figure 2.15 match the UML multiplicities shown in Figure 2.1. For instance, the Teaches relationship restricts a course to be taught by at most one faculty member.

The program in Figure 2.15 demonstrates that relationship-based implementations are more “lightweight” than their object-oriented counterparts (see Figure 2.13 for the object-oriented implementation of relationship Attends). Most apparent is the decrease in declarations. Programming languages with first-class relationship support provide built-in constructs for relationship set up and instance retrieval. As a result, the declaration of auxiliary extent classes (e.g., Attends in Figure 2.13) to store related objects is unnecessary. Likewise, the declaration of auxiliary methods (e.g., set up and retrieval methods in Figure 2.13) to enumerate and query related objects is unnecessary. Besides the decrease in code size, relationship-based implementations restore modular reasoning for relationships as relationships are encapsulated in one program unit. Modular reasoning eases program maintenance since program changes become more local and are thus less likely to accidentally introduce errors in other parts of the program.
2.4 Related work

In this section, we review existing relationship-based programming languages and related attempts to capture the interdependencies between objects in a programming language. In Chapter 3, we introduce the relationship-based programming language Rumer that we elaborated in this thesis. We delimit the differences between the existing relationship-based languages discussed in this section and Rumer in Chapter 3, along with the introduction of the Rumer language concepts.

**Relationship-based programming languages.** Rumbaugh [1] first pointed out the importance of relations (relationship) as a semantic construct for object-oriented programming. He introduces an object-oriented programming language, the Data Structure Manager (DSM), that complements classes with relations. A relation in DSM, is an ordered list of an arbitrary number of classes. The index of a class in a relation can be denoted by a role name. DSM allows programmers to restrict the cardinality of a relation and also supports operations to add and remove instances of relations to and from the set of all instances of a relation or to iterate over such sets. While relations in DSM are explicit, they are not yet at the same level as classes. For example, relations can neither declare attributes nor methods. Besides contributing the programming language DSM, Rumbaugh provides an experience report on the representation of relations in object-oriented languages.

Albano et al. [2] propose an object-relationship data model that supports both classes and associations (relationships) to represent classes as well as the relationships between them. The data model is embodied in a statically and strongly-typed object-oriented database programming language. An important characteristic of the work is the availability of a rich range of constraints (e.g., disjointness constraints for classes, cardinality constraints for associations, and surjectivity and referential constraints for associations and their participating classes). The constraints are expressed declaratively and checked dynamically. Constraint checking is implemented based on the nested transactional support of the database programming language and guarantees atomic treatment of constraints (e.g., surjectivity) that can only be preserved by a sequence of operations. Similarly to Rumbaugh [1], Albano et al. also take a “set-oriented” approach: classes and associations are perceived as sets and relations, respectively, which are explicitly populated and depopulated by the programmer. The language supports relational bulk data operators to manipulate such sets of classes and associations. As opposed to Rumbaugh [1], Albano et al. allow associations to declare their own attributes. Furthermore, they introduce a minimal kernel language that expresses the complete object-relationship data model. The kernel language employs associations as its primitive abstraction and expresses classes as unary associations.

Bierman and Wren [3, 5] provide a formal treatment of first-class relationships in object-oriented programming languages and contribute the type system and operational seman-
tics of RelJ, a Java-like language with support for first-class relationships. As opposed to previous works, relationships in RelJ are at the same level as classes and feature not only attributes and methods but also advanced concepts, such as relationship inheritance. As opposed to class inheritance, relationship inheritance is based on a restricted form of delegation. Delegation determines the look-up of inherited relationship fields: a relationship instance passes (delegates) all look-up requests for inherited fields to its supertype relationship instance that exists between those same objects. In order for delegation to work, Bierman and Wren establish the invariant that corresponding supertype relationship instances exist for all subtype relationship instances. Bierman and Wren also discuss the addition of UML multiplicity constraints to RelJ. They outline a restricted, static approach to enforcing UML multiplicity constraints based on one and many annotations. The approach automatically results in the removal of any conflicting, existing relationship instances upon creation of a new relationship instance. In this context, Bierman and Wren point out a tension between the invariant that triggers implicit instantiation of supertype relationships and the implicit removal of relationship instances for multiplicity constraint enforcement. The implicit instantiation of a supertype relationship is problematic for supertype relationships that restrict the multiplicity of at least one participant to one. As soon as different subtype relationships are instantiated that involve different objects at the one-side, the implicit creation of the corresponding supertype relationship instances puts the multiplicity of the supertype relationship at risk. To prevent invalidation of a relationship’s multiplicity, Bierman and Wren suggest not only the removal of the conflicting supertype relationship instance but also of all subtype relationship instances that exist between those same objects.

Wren [5] complements the class-based exploration of first-class relationships conducted in [3, 5] with an object-based calculus for heap queries. As opposed to RelJ, this calculus does not rely on an explicit abstraction for relationships but allows relationships to be expressed in terms of heap queries. To sustain this claim, Wren provides a translation of RelJ into the object-based calculus.

Nelson et al. [6] introduce an object-oriented programming language with support for first-class relationships that relies on a three-tiered model. In that model, objects are represented by one tier and relationships between objects are represented by two separate tiers, the link tier and the relationship tier. Whereas links are state-less object tuples, relationships denote groups of links and augment those links with state and behavior. Nelson et al. were the first to propose explicit instantiation of such relationships, allowing programmers to distinguish different collection instances of a relationship type. This proposal innovates over previous work which only permits singleton collections of a relationship type.

Liu and Smith [4] describe Classages, an object-oriented programming language designed to provide better support for expressing object interactions. Similarly to a class, a classage declares fields and methods. In addition, a classage specifies a separate interaction interface to capture the various collaborations in which an instance of a classage (called
R E L A T I O N S H I P S

objectage) may participate. There are various kinds of interaction interfaces available (e.g., connector, pluggor, and mixer) to support the various kinds of collaborations that may arise between objects (e.g., whole-part-communication, peer-to-peer communication). As opposed to work on programming languages that provides explicit support for first-class relationships, Classages does not provide a separate language abstraction for relationships. However, the expression of relationships in Classages would definitively benefit from the availability of interaction-specific interfaces.

The Rumer programming and specification language differs in many aspects from existing relationship-based programming languages. We provide a more detailed comparison along with the introduction to Rumer in Chapter 3, but briefly highlight the main differences at this point. The resulting design of the Rumer programming language reflects our efforts to grasp the genuine characteristics of first-class relationships. Rather than extending an object-oriented programming language with first-class relationships, we elaborated a programming language that employs first-class relationships as its primary abstraction. This slight change in intention importantly shapes the resulting programming language. Most remarkable is the role references take in Rumer. Whereas references in traditional, object-oriented languages, are key to determining a program’s heap structure, references lose this ability in Rumer. Instead, heap structures in Rumer are captured explicitly using first-class relationships. In this thesis, we leverage this structure-giving property of first-class relationships for program construction and program verification. Besides this difference in underlying intention, Rumer also differs from existing relationship-based programming languages in the range of supported language features. Unlike other relationship-based programming languages, Rumer supports Design-by-Contract-style [21] assertions (see Section 3.2.5 on page 55), side-effect free heap queries (see Section 3.2.3 on page 49), and member interposition, a mechanism to express relationship-dependent properties of objects (see Section 3.2.4 on page 51).

Relationship libraries. Pearce and Noble [47, 48] contribute the Relationship Aspect Library (RAL), a library facilitating the implementation of first-class relationships in a purely object-oriented language. RAL leverages aspect-oriented programming [49, 50] and represents relationships as separate abstractions using aspects. The relationships that can be implemented using RAL are similar in expressiveness to RelJ [3, 5] relationships. For example, both approaches require that relationships are explicitly populated and de-populated by the programmer and both approaches support relationship inheritance. In addition, Pearce and Noble provide a rich range of predefined relationship kinds and the possibility to declare fields for relationship participants using AspectJ’s inter-type declarations [51]. The predefined relationships, for example, support the declaration of UML multiplicity constraints, which are monitored at run-time.

Østerbye [52] contributes the Noiai association library that provides a reusable class library facilitating the implementation of first-class relationships in a purely object-oriented setting. As opposed to Pearce’s and Noble’s [47, 48] relationship library RAL, which is based on aspects, the Noiai association library is implemented in C++. The features sup-
ported by the Noiai association library are similar in expressiveness to the ones supported by RAL; however, Noiai also supports advanced operators (i.e., Composition, Inverse, and Closure) to obtain new (read-only) associations from programmer-defined associations.

Bodden et al. [53] generalize the library-based approach of Pearce and Noble [47, 48] to use relational tracematches. Relational tracematches are based on tracematches [54], an extension of Aspect/J [51] to abstract over the execution history of an Aspect/J program. Relational tracematches represent aspect-based language features for executing an advice after having matched a sequence of events. The new implementation scheme supports n-ary relationships (a feature not supported by Pearce and Noble) and furthermore prevents name clashes that may arise under certain circumstances in Pearce and Noble’s approach [53].

**Relation types.** Vaziri et al. [55] introduce relation types for the declarative definition of object identity. A relation type resembles a class in Java but entails a well-defined semantics for instance equality. Instance equality is no longer determined by the implementations of the methods `equals()` and `hashCode()` but by a number of immutable key fields declared by the relation type. Vaziri et al. provide a formalization of their equality model based on Featherweight Java [56] and a prototype compiler that extends Java with relation types. Although devised for a different purpose, relation types bear a resemblance to first-class relationships. Namely, if the key fields of a relation type are reference type fields, then a relation type defines a relationship.

Nelson et al. [57] build on Vaziri et al.’s work [55] and introduce Affinity, an untyped, object-oriented programming language with a new equality operator based on EGAL [58] and key fields. Similarly as in Vaziri et al., relationships can be implemented in Affinity by declaring a class with reference type key fields.

**Design relationships.** Noble and Grundy [59, 36] describe ways of persisting relationships from the modeling to the implementation stage of object-oriented development. The authors provide valuable guidelines that detail how to encode relationships in terms of the primitives of an object-oriented language so that they remain distinguishable as relationships in the resulting code. Their approach is purely class-based and does not consider language support for relationships.

**Specification relationships.** Jaspan and Aldrich [60] introduce relationships as an abstraction to specify the proper interactions between frameworks and their plugins. They contribute FUSION (Framework Usage SpecificatIOns), an annotation-based specification language to constrain the interactions between frameworks and plugins. In FUSION, relationships can be defined between objects, and method signatures are annotated to describe what effects method executions have on the relationships. In addition, FUSION allows the specification of propositional constraints on relationships. Those constraints
are expressed as class-level annotations and may be temporal, involve several objects, and depend on run-time values. The authors further contribute three variants (sound, complete, and pragmatic) of a static analysis to detect constraint violations in plugins, an implementation of the pragmatic analysis, and an empirical evaluation of this analysis in the context of the ASP.NET and Eclipse JDT frameworks.

Roles. Reenskaug [61] introduces role models to describe the structure of cooperating objects along with their static and dynamic properties. Role models are purely conceptual and focus on message-based interactions. However, they could assist in the identification of relationships during system design since relationships can be regarded as representations of particular role models. Riehle and Gross [62, 63] generalize role modeling for framework design and provide a unifying treatment of class-based modeling and role modeling.

Steimann [64] provides a comprehensive treatise of the concept of a role by surveying its occurrence in conceptual modeling languages and object-oriented programming languages. From this survey, Steimann derives a list of desired properties of a role, whereby some properties may conflict with each other. Steimann’s list provides a valid foundation to assess any approach that supports roles (or a related abstraction) as an explicit concept.

Whereas Reenskaug [61] as well as Riehle and Gross [62, 63] employ roles as purely conceptual notions during software design, Herrmann et al. [65, 66] provide explicit support for roles at the level of the programming language. Herrmann et al. describe ObjectTeams, a programming language based on Java that centers on the notion of an Object Team. An Object Team is a module that combines a number of role-playing objects and that can be instantiated. The focus of Herrmann’s et al.’s work is the a-posteriori integration of collaborations into existing systems. To this end, the language allows programmers to forward method calls from teams to base classes and offers advice-like constructs, known from aspect-oriented programming [49], to override methods of base classes.

Like Herrmann et al. [65, 66], Baldoni et al. [67] also provide explicit support for roles at the level of the programming language. They introduce powerJava, an extension of Java that allows a programmer to represent the individual roles an object may assume as Java inner classes. The role model supported by powerJava is particularly suited for the implementation of session-based applications (e.g., access control, web services) where the individual interactions between objects are represented by roles.

Pradel and Odersky [68] contribute a library for the Scala programming language [69] that supports roles as an explicit abstraction. The library-based approach is lightweight but provides all the necessary constructs to capture roles as well as the collaborations between roles. It leverages dynamic proxies to relate the various roles of an object to the role-playing object and to provide a matching identity both for an object and its roles.
Rumer is a relationship-based programming language with Design-by-Contract-style assertions that provides programmers with appropriate abstractions to succinctly represent both the objects of real-world systems and the relationships between them. In this chapter, we first discuss the rationale underlying the design of the Rumer programming language (Section 3.1) and then introduce the programming language itself. We present Rumer’s main language concepts (Section 3.2), its type system (Section 3.3) and semantics (Section 3.4). To gain practical experience with first-class relationships, we designed and implemented a prototype compiler for the Rumer programming language that supports run-time checking of Design-by-Contract-style assertions. We built and successively refined the compiler along with the development of the Rumer language.

3.1 Rationale

Once the relationships between classes are made explicit in a program using first-class relationships, new opportunities for program modularization arise. Thanks to first-class relationships, programmers are given the possibility to structure a software system not only from the view of an individual object but also from the view of the relationship in which the object participates.

Figure 3.1 and Figure 3.2 contrast the resulting run-time structure of an object-oriented implementation of the running example (see Section 2.1.1 on page 8) with the one of a relationship-based implementation, respectively. Figure 3.1 shows a snapshot of the program heap of the object-oriented implementation. It represents objects as dark gray circles. The program heap thus consists of the Student objects Susan, Paul, Alice, and John; the Course objects Math, Art, Compiler, and Programming; and the Faculty objects Franklin Wong, Jennifer Wallace, and Ramesh Narayan. The implementation is based on the DBU programming idiom (see Section 2.1.3 on page 9); the resulting unidirectional references are depicted by arrows in Figure 3.1. Figure 3.2, on the other hand, shows the corresponding snapshot of the program heap of a relationship-based

---

1Class Student actually declares a multi-valued reference field (e.g., LinkedList<Course>) to refer to the courses assisted by a student. Since irrelevant to the current discussion, Figure 3.1 omits this detail.
implementation of the running example. The relationship-based program heap consists of the same Student, Course, and Faculty objects as the object-oriented heap. In addition, the relationship-based heap comprises instances of the relationships Assists and Teaches. Figure 3.2 represents relationship instances as light gray ellipses that are connected by lines to the objects they relate. For example, there are two Assists relationship instances that connect the Student object Alice to the Course objects Art and Compiler, indicating that Alice assists both the courses Art and Compiler.

Given the separate run-time abstraction of a relationship instance, relationship-based programming languages introduce a layer of indirection between objects and restore the bidirectional nature of relationships. In the design of the Rumer programming language we drew from this observation. To facilitate access of the instances residing at either side of the relationship, Rumer supports appropriate retrieval operators. Since objects can participate in several relationships, those operators must be capable of dealing with sets of objects. To cover the complete spectrum of set-based operators, we designed Rumer so as to support a set-oriented view of a program’s run-time structure. To this end, the Rumer
system maintains explicit collections of the various instances of a Rumer type. Figure 3.2 represents those explicit collections of instances as rounded rectangles, and Rumer allows them to be queried for instance retrieval.

To reason about Rumer query operators, we use the abstractions of a set and a relation to capture the explicit collections of instances in Figure 3.2. A relationship instance is abstracted as an object tuple since it relates objects. The heap of a relationship-based program can thus be abstractly described by the sets of objects of the declared classes and the relations (i.e., sets of object tuples) between those sets of objects. For example, the heap snapshot depicted in Figure 3.2 can be abstracted by the sets:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Student} & = \{\text{Susan, Paul, John, Alice}\} \\
\text{Course} & = \{\text{Art, Program, Math, Compiler}\} \\
\text{Faculty} & = \{\text{Wallace, Narayan, Wong}\}
\end{align*}
\]

and the relations:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Assists} & = \{\text{Paul \rightarrow Math, John \rightarrow Program, Alice \rightarrow Art, Alice \rightarrow Compiler}\} \\
\text{Teaches} & = \{\text{Wallace \rightarrow Program, Wallace \rightarrow Math, Narayan \rightarrow Compiler, Wong \rightarrow Art}\}
\end{align*}
\]

Given the abstractions of a set and relation, Rumer query operators can leverage the theoretical underpinning of relational database [70] and support the full range of relational query operators. For example, to retrieve all the Student objects that assist courses, the projection operator can be applied to the Assists collection. The abstractions of a set and relation also build the basis of the relational model that we introduced in [71]. We used this model as a meta model during the design of the Rumer programming language. The relational model allows a Rumer program to be captured in terms of the constructs of discrete mathematics. For example, the running example can be abstracted by the following model:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Assists} & \subseteq \text{Student} \times \text{Course} \\
\text{Teaches} & \subseteq \text{Faculty} \times \text{Course}
\end{align*}
\]

The existence of a mathematical model of a program is essential for reasoning about the program and, ultimately, verifying the program. Facilitating static program verification is also the ultimate goal that guided us in the design of the Rumer programming language. To facilitate program verification, the Rumer language enforces certain principles that follow naturally from first-class relationships. For example, the use of explicit collections to capture sets of objects and sets of object tuples proves beneficial to speak about disjoint regions of the program heap, and the Rumer language semantics thus guarantees that the resulting heap partitions remain disjoint. Also, the availability of side-effect free query operators proves valuable in the expression of assertions on a program’s state, and
the Rumer type system and language semantics thus enforces purity of Rumer query expressions.

In Rumer, references lose their significance in building the object graph. Instead, the heap structure is built declaratively using first-class relationships. References also lose their importance in navigating the object graph since instances in Rumer can be accessed by means of queries. These observations raise the legitimate question whether references are needed after all in Rumer. In an early version of the Rumer programming language, we deliberately chose not to support references, to probe the practicability of such an approach. The nonexistence of references did actually not rule out any software designs. In some cases, the set-oriented take even rendered the resulting implementation more lightweight and practicable. In other cases, it turned out to be more convenient to refer to a particular instance rather than having to deal with several instances. As a result, the current version of the Rumer programming language supports both references and queries, leaving the programmer the choice to choose whichever construct is more suited for a particular situation.

3.2 Language concepts

In this section, we provide an overview of Rumer’s main language concepts.

3.2.1 Entities and relationships

Figure 3.3 shows the skeleton of the Rumer program implementing the running example (see Section 2.1.1 on page 8). The program consists of a sequence of entity and relationship declarations as well as one application declaration. The Rumer program skeleton shown in Figure 3.3 is similar to the first-class relationship-based implementation of the running example shown in Figure 2.15 on page 33. Apart from the application declaration, all declarations of the Rumer program skeleton have a matching counterpart in Figure 2.15: the entity declarations Student, Course, and Faculty correspond to the class declarations Student, Course, and Faculty in Figure 2.15 and the relationship declarations Attends, Assists, and Teaches correspond to the relationship declarations Attends, Assists, and Teaches in Figure 2.15. We deliberately chose the name “entity” for class declarations in Rumer to set Rumer entities apart from classes in existing relationship-based programming languages [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]. In those languages, classes are essentially equivalent to the classes of pure object-oriented programming languages but they can be augmented with relationships if explicit representation of the relationships between classes is desired. Rumer, in contrast, takes advantage of the relationship declarations and offers unique encapsulation guarantees for entities. As we detail in Chapter 4, those encapsulation guarantees result from a stratification of program declarations, which is induced by the relationship declarations.

As opposed to entities and relationships, an application is a mere organizational unit that
3.2 Language Concepts

Figure 3.3: Rumer program skeleton implementing running example (see Section 2.1.1 on page 8).

cannot be instantiated. The differentiation between entities and relationships, on the one hand, and an application, on the other hand, is analogous to Liskov and Zilles’ [72] differentiation between operation clusters and procedures to facilitate data abstraction and functional abstraction, respectively. Every Rumer program must declare one application. This requirement is syntactically enforced and manifest in the Rumer grammar, which is shown in Appendix A.1 on page 211. The grammar is specified in EBNF (Extended Backus-Naur Form) form: curly braces \( \{ \text{term} \} \) denote zero, one, or more repetitions of \( \text{term} \) and squared brackets \( \left\{ \text{term} \right\} \) denote zero or one repetition of \( \text{term} \). It conforms to the ANTLR [73] style guidelines and uses lower case initial letters for non-terminals (i.e., parser rules) and upper case initial letters for terminals (i.e., lexer rules). Production program in Appendix A.1 specifies that a Rumer program consists of a sequence of entity and relationship declarations and one application declaration. Production application-Decl specifies that an application declaration must declare the so called main() action. The main() action denotes the program entry point. Figure 3.3 declares the application University, which declares the main() action on line 12. In addition to the main action, an application can declare global variables (appVarDecl in Figure 3.3) as well as further value-returning or void routines, so called actions (actionDecl in Figure 3.3). Actions can invoke each other and can be invoked by the main() action. In the example, the main() action invokes the void action printWelcomeMessage(), which is declared on line 15 and writes the text “Hello university application!” to the console. Action printWelcomeMessage() invokes the built-in operator writeString() (see production statement in Appendix A.1) for that purpose.

Moreover, there are some further syntactic differences between the implementation of the running example shown in Figure 2.15 on page 33 and the Rumer implementation of the running example. The most obvious syntactic difference is the declaration of the participants of a relationship. In Rumer, the participants of a relationship are declared using a
participants clause, which denotes the types of the instances that can be related by a relationship instance. The current Rumer language only supports binary relationships; however, all the features of the Rumer language introduced in this thesis generalize to n-ary relationships. According to production participantsDecl in Figure 3.3, programmers can assign identifiers to relationship participants to denote the particular role a participant plays in a relationship. For example, the participants clause of relationship Assists assigns the identifiers ta and course to the participant types Student and Course (line 8 in Figure 3.3), respectively, to denote that a student plays the role of a teaching assistant and a course the role of a course when participating in the Assists relationship. Role identifiers can be used in the program text to access the participants of a relationship. As opposed to the implementation of the running example shown in Figure 2.15, the Rumer implementation does not declare the cardinality of a relationship as part of its participants declaration. In Section 3.2.5, we discuss how cardinality constraints are expressed in Rumer. In that section, we introduce Rumer’s specification language, which allows the expression of a rich range of consistency constraints.

3.2.2 Elements and extents

Programming languages with support for first-class relationships provide built-in constructs for relationship set up and relationship instance retrieval. Typically, such languages rely on the notion of an extent. The term extent originates from the relational database community and the ODMG (Object Data Management Group) object model [74] in particular, where an extent of a type denotes the set of all instances of the type. To facilitate enumeration of objects and relationship instances, the run-time systems of relationship-based programming languages maintain an implicit extent for each class and relationship declaration. In most existing relationship-based programming languages [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6] extents are singleton sets. In this case, an extent contains all the existing instances of a type. Nelson et al. were the first to propose explicit extent instantiation to support multiple extent instances for first-class relationships [6]. If multiple extent instances of a type exist, then an extent instance may only contain a subset of all the existing instances of a type and only the union of all extent instances amounts to the set of all the existing instances of a type. Our experience has shown that extent instantiation is vital for implementing recursive data structures with relationships. As a result, Rumer supports explicit extent instantiation for entities and relationships.

We illustrate explicit extent instantiation using the example of the Composite pattern. The Composite pattern “composes objects into tree structures to represent part-whole hierarchies and lets clients treat leaf objects and composite objects uniformly.” [37]. Figure 3.4 provides the UML class diagram of the Composite pattern. The UML aggregation between class Component and class Composite indicates that the pattern is an instance of a recursive data structure. Figure 3.5 sketches the corresponding implementation of the Composite pattern in Rumer. The Rumer program consists of the entity declaration Component and the relationship declarations Parent and Composite. Entity
Component represents the basic constituents of a composite. Relationship Parent represents the hierarchical structure between the components of a composite, and relationship Composite represents the actual composite. Relationship Composite represents a “nested” relationship as it declares another relationship (i.e., Parent) as its participant.

The participants clause of the relationship Parent indicates that the Parent relationship relates one Component entity to another Component entity, and assigns the role identifiers child and parent to those entities, respectively. Figure 3.6 provides a
graphical illustration of a number of run-time instantiations of the Parent relationship and its participating Component entity. The figure is based on the graphical notation introduced in Figure 3.2: entity instances are represented as dark gray circles and relationship instances as light gray ellipses, and lines are used to connect relationship instances to their participant instances. Figure 3.6 labels entity instances and relationship instances with numbers and letters, respectively, allowing us to refer to those numbers and letters in the text. To prevent possible confusion between instances of entities and relationships, on the one hand, and instances of entity extents and relationships extents, on the other hand, we use the term element instance and extent instance, respectively. We chose the term “element instance” for the former to emphasize the fact that those instances are elements of extent instances. Figure 3.6 shows the five Parent relationship element instances A, B, C, D, and E, and the six Component entity element instances 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6. The graphic depicts the hierarchical structuring achieved by the Parent relationship by displaying a Component element instance that plays the role of a parent relatively above the Component element instances that assume the corresponding child role. The lines connecting a Parent element instance to its participating Component element instances are labelled with the role identifiers declared by Parent’s participants clause. In the program text, role identifiers can be used to access the participant instances of a relationship element instance.

The Rumer Composite program in Figure 3.5 makes use of extent instantiation in its main() action. It instantiates a Component extent on line 23 and binds it to the variable components, and it instantiates a Composite extent on line 24 and binds it to the variable composites. This use of extent instances as “global” element containers is in line with the proposal by Nelson et al. [6]. The participants clause of the relationship Composite, however, demonstrates that extent instances can also be participants of relationship element instances. A Composite element instance uses an extent in-
3.2 LANGUAGE CONCEPTS

stance of the Parent relationship to represent the hierarchical structure of a composite. It has a Component element instance as a root participant and a Parent extent instance as a tree participant. We introduced extent instances as participants of relationship element instances in [75]. Such participating extent instances are vital for implementing recursive data structures with relationships. In the Rumer Composite program, Parent extents are instantiated and related to their root Component element instance in method createComposite() on line 11.

Figure 3.7 shows a graphical illustration of the complete heap of the Rumer Composite program. The figure uses the same graphical notation as Figure 3.6 but complements it with extent instances. Extent instances are represented as rectangular boxes. The program heap comprises four extent instances: one Component extent instance, two Parent extent instances, and one Composite extent instance. Both the Component and the Composite extent instance are created on line 23 and 24, respectively, in Figure 3.5, and the two Parent extent instances are created by the two invocations of method createComposite() on line 26 and 27 in Figure 3.5. Each extent instance comprises a number of element instances. The Component extent instance comprises seven Component element instances, the two Parent extent instances comprise five Parent element instances and one Parent element instance, respectively, and the Composite extent instance comprises two Composite element instances. As Figure 3.6, Figure 3.7 connects relationship element instances to their participant instances by lines. To keep the graphical layout well-arranged, Figure 3.7 introduces an intermediate “shadow” participant instance and connects the relationship element instance to this “shadow” participant instance whenever a direct connecting line to the actual participant instance would result in any crossing lines. A shadow participant instance is a graphical copy of the participant instance that is the actual participant of the relationship element instance. Shadow participant instances are represented by the same symbol as their actual participant instances, but with dotted lines, and they are connected to their actual participant instances by dotted lines. Figure 3.7 uses shadow participant instances for Component element instances. For example, the Parent element instances residing in the left Parent extent instance make use of three shadow Component element instances: one for the Component element instance assuming the topmost parent component and one for each of its direct children components. Some Component element instances and Parent element instances in Figure 3.7 are labelled with numbers and letters, respectively. These are exactly the instances that appear in Figure 3.7. The dotted lines between the shadow of the topmost component of a composite’s tree and the shadow of a composite’s root component indicate that the root component of a composite is at the top of its tree. The dotted lines converging in the Component element instance 3 illustrate that the same Component element instance can be a constituent of different Composite element instances.

The differentiation between element instances and extent instances reveals that entity or relationship declarations in Rumer give rise to two type definitions: an element type of the declared entity or relationship as well as an extent type of the declared entity or rela-
3 RUMER: A RELATIONSHIP-BASED PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE

Figure 3.7: Graphical illustration of extent instantiation based on the heap snapshot of the Composite program sketched in Figure 3.5. The graphic shows 1 Component extent instance with 7 Component element instances, 2 Parent extent instances with 5 and 1 Parent element instance(s), resp., and 1 Composite extent instance with 2 Composite element instances. The graphic subsumes Figure 3.6 in its left Parent extent instance and uses the same numbers and letters as in Figure 3.6 to label the common Component element instances and Parent element instances. The Component extent instance is referred to by the local variable components (line 23 in Figure 3.5) and created on line 23 in Figure 3.5. The Composite extent instance is referred to by the local variable composites (line 24 in Figure 3.5) and created on line 24 in Figure 3.5. The 2 Parent extent instances are created by the two invocations of method createComposite() on line 26 and line 27 in Figure 3.5; method createComposite() instantiates a Parent extent (line 11 in Figure 3.5).

We detail the Rumer type system in Section 3.3. In this section, we focus on the more practical aspects of element and extent declaration. According to productions entityDecl and relationshipDecl of the Rumer grammar in Appendix A.1 on page 211, element and extent types of entities or relationships are declared in-line with the entity or relationship declaration. The differentiation between element and extent types occurs at the level of member declarations. Entity and relationship members encompass fields, methods, queries, and invariants (production memberDecl), and according to the productions fieldDecl, queryDecl, methodDecl, and invariantDecl each of those members can either be attributed to an element type or to an extent type. We discuss queries and invariants in Section 3.2.3 and Section 3.2.5, respectively.
Extent members are denoted by the *extent* keyword, which precedes the member declaration. In the Rumer Composite program in Figure 3.5, relationship `Parent` declares the extent method `append()`, and relationship `Composite` declares the extent method `createComposite()` and the element method `appendComponent()`. Both element and extent members have an implicit target associated. In the case of an element member, the implicit target is an element instance of the type declaring the element member. In the case of an extent member, the implicit target is an extent instance of the type declaring the extent member. The current receiver instance of an element member or an extent member can be referred to by the *this* or *these* keywords, respectively. For example, the element method `appendComponent()` refers to the current `Composite` element receiver instance on line 15 in Figure 3.5 to invoke method `append()` on its tree `Parent` extent instance. Similarly, the extent method `append()` of relationship `Parent` invokes the `add()` operator on its current `Parent` extent receiver instance on line 5. The operator `add()` is a built-in operator of the Rumer language (see production `primaryExpr` in Appendix A.1 on page 211) and allows populating an extent instance. Depopulation of an extent instance is achieved by `add()`’s inverse operator `remove()` (see production `statement` in Appendix A.1).

To indicate the type of an instance declaration, such as the type of a local variable, programmers use the Rumer source types listed in Appendix A.1 on page 211. According to production `elementType`, the type of an element instance of an entity or relationship is denoted by the name of the declaring entity or relationship. According to production `extentType`, the type of an extent instance of an entity or relationship is denoted by the name of the declaring entity or relationship embraced by `Extent<>`. For example, the `main()` action of the Rumer Composite program declares two local variables of the element type `Component` on line 22 and two local variables of the extent types `Extent<Component>` and `Extent<Composite>` on line 23 and 24, respectively. Furthermore, the `participants` clauses of relationship `Parent` and relationship `Composite` indicate that a `Parent` element instance relates an instance of the element type `Component` to an instance of the element type `Component` and that a `Composite` element instance relates an instance of the element type `Component` to an instance of the extent type `Extent<Parent>`, respectively. Valid relationship participant types are element types and extent types of entities and relationships.

### 3.2.3 Predicate references

The Rumer programming language supports a rich range of *query operators* to retrieve element instances from extent instances. All supported query operators are listed in Appendix A.1 on page 211. Using such a query operator, we can find out for our university example (see Figure 3.3), which students received a grade higher than 5. This example assumes a Swiss grading scale, in which 6 represents the highest grade and 1 the lowest one. Given a variable `Extent<Attends> attends`, the corresponding query is formulated as:
The query uses the select() operator and invokes it on the extent instance referred to by attends. The select() operator takes a lambda expression as argument that specifies the selection criterion. In the example, the lambda expression consists of the lambda variable s_c and the lambda term s_c.grade > 5. The lambda term must evaluate to a boolean expression. The lambda variable is chosen by the programmer and its type is an element type of the type of the expression on which the select operator is invoked. In the example, the lambda variable is of the element type Attends since the select() operator is invoked on an instance of the extent type Attends. A select() operator evaluates to a subset of the set on which the operator is invoked. In the example, the expression attends.select(s_c: s_c.grade > 5) thus evaluates to a subset of all student-course pairs that are contained in the extent instance referred to by attends. By applying the role projection operator learner on the set returned by the select() operator, the result set is reduced to the set of all students who participate in the Attends relationship and who attend at least one course for which they received a grade higher than 5.

Query expressions can be bound to variables in Rumer. For the above query expression, this can be achieved using the let...be binding (see Appendix A.1 on page 211) in one of the two following ways: by either supplying a name for the query expression

let cleverStudents be attends.select(s_c: s_c.grade > 5).learner;

or by supplying a name for the query expression as well as the type of its result expression.

let query Set<Student> cleverStudents be
attends.select(s_c: s_c.grade > 5).learner;

If no type is supplied, the compiler infers the type from the type of the target expression. As opposed to an assignment, the let...be binding has a non-strict evaluation semantics. Rather than evaluating the query expression, it binds the query expression (as opposed to its result) to the provided variable. The query expression is only evaluated once the variable to which the query expression is bound is read. Since the program state may change in-between subsequent reads of a query variable, the query may actually evaluate to a different result upon subsequent reads. For example, in the code fragment shown below, the variable cleverStudents may evaluate to a different result set upon its first read on line 3 than upon its second read on line 8.

```java
1  Student s;
2  ...
3  if (s isElementOf cleverStudents) {
4    writeString("Student " + s.name + " is a clever student.\n");
5  }
6  ...
7  // some modifications of attends
8  let query int avgGradeCleverStudent be
9    Attends.select(s_c: s_c.learner isElementOf cleverStudents).grade.average();
```

The code fragment shown above exemplifies that the let...be binding achieves a call-by-name evaluation strategy and thus guarantees that a variable bound to a query expression faithfully reflects the state of the program heap upon each read. Due to this property,
we also call query variables *predicate references*. The code fragment shown above further exemplifies that query expressions can be nested and that query variables can be of a primitive type. The variable `avgGradeCleverStudent`, for example, evaluates to an integer value and uses the query variable `cleverStudents` as part of its query expression. The query variable evaluates to the average grade of all the grades of students who attend at least one course for which they received a grade higher than 5. In the code examples shown so far, all the query expressions were bound to local variables. As indicated by production `queryDecl` in Appendix A.1 on page 211, query expressions can also be declared as element or extent members of entities and relationships. Element or extent queries are bound to an element or extent instance, respectively, and thus come with an implicit target. For completeness, Rumer supports also storing the results of query expressions in variables. To achieve a call-by-value binding, as opposed to a call-by-name binding, programmers must use the assignment operator.

The idea to incorporate database-like queries into a programming languages to query the program heap is not new. Recently, database heap queries found their ways into object-oriented programming languages where queries are granted first-class citizenship [76, 5, 77, 78, 79]. In such languages, queries are not only used to interface with external data stores but also to access the objects that exist in the program heap. Whereas most existing work focuses on heap query support in object-oriented languages, Wren [5] pointed out the importance of heap queries in languages with first-class relationships. He provides an object-based calculus for heap queries and demonstrates that relationships can be expressed in terms of such heap queries. Our work is based on Wren’s observation, but adds heap queries on top of a language that provides an explicit abstraction for relationships. Rumer supports a similar range of query operators as those in LINQ (.NET Language-Integrated Query) [78, 79]. Like LINQ, Rumer uses lambda expressions as part of query operators. Rumer heap queries, however, differ in an important aspect from existing heap querying approaches: they are *side-effect free*. This property makes Rumer queries become true predicates over the extents they are applied to. A more subtle distinction also arises from Rumer’s meta model. Given its foundation in sets and relations, Rumer’s query operators cover the full range of discrete mathematics operators, including set union and relational closure.

### 3.2.4 Member interposition

Some properties of objects only apply when the object is fulfilling a particular role [61]. In the university example, for instance, we may need to record the language in which a student takes a written exam. The language in which a student takes an exam is an instance of a property of a student that is relevant only to those students who attend courses, but not to all students in general. Rumer provides the mechanism of *member interposition* to express properties of instances that are dependent on the instance’s participation in a relationship. We introduced member interposition in [71]. In Chapter 5 and Chapter 7 we demonstrate that member interposition eases the modular verification of invariants over
shared state. In this section, we focus on the characteristics of member interposition from a programmer’s point of view.

Figure 3.8 shows an excerpt of the Rumer university program shown in Figure 3.3. The excerpt shows an extended version of the Attends relationship. The new version of the Attends relationship uses member interposition to “decorate” a Student element instance that participates in the Attends relationship as a learner with further properties. According to production interpositionDecl in Appendix A.1 on page 211, an interposed member is declared using the ‘>’ sign, which precedes the role identifier of the relationship participant into which the member is interposed. The Attends relationship thus declares the interposed relationship element field language (line 6) and the interposed relationship element method print() (line 8) and interleposes both members into the role learner. In addition to the interposed element members, relationship Attends declares the non-interposed element field grade (line 5) and the non-interposed element method print() (line 12).

Both non-interposed element members and interposed element members of a relationship have an implicit target. For a non-interposed relationship element member, the implicit target is an element instance of the declaring relationship. For example, the this reference in the non-interposed element method print() (line 14 and line 15) refers to the current Attends element receiver instance. For an interposed relationship element member, on the other hand, the implicit target is an instance of the declaring relationship’s participant type that plays the role into which the interposed member is interposed. As we discuss in more detail in Section 3.3, member interposition gives rise to a new type definition: the role type of the participant into which the member is interposed. A role type of a relationship participant is a subtype of the participant type. For example, the this reference in the interposed element method print() (line 9) refers to the current learner role element instance of relationship Attends, which is a subtype of the
element type Student. A role type of a relationship inherits all members from its participant supertype. For example, role learner inherits the element field name from its supertype Student. Inherited members are accessible to a role element instance by the this reference (e.g., this.name on line 9 of interposed method print()). However, interposed members do not override any equally named members of their participant supertype and are thus not dynamically dispatched. For example, if entity Student declared an element method print(), then the interposed element method print() in Attends would shadow that method.

Figure 3.9 shows a program heap snapshot of the Rumer university program of Figure 3.8. Figure 3.9 uses the same graphical items as Figure 3.7 to represent element instances and extent instances. As Figure 3.7, Figure 3.9 introduces shadow element instances of entity Student to keep the graphical layout well-arranged. As opposed to Figure 3.7, Figure 3.9 displays the values of selected element fields as part of the graphical items rather than the element instance’s type. For example, the circles representing Student element instances display the values of the Student element field name and the ones representing Course element instances display the values of the Course element field title. The ellipses representing Attends element instances display the values of the non-interposed Attends element field grade. In addition to the graphical items of Figure 3.7, Figure 3.9 depicts role element instances to display the values of interposed element fields. Role element instances are represented as light gray arcs. They are connected by a line to element instances of the relationship that declares the interposed element members and “huddle” against the element instance of their participant supertype. For example, the leftmost learner role element instance with the value “English” for the interposed Attends element field language is connected to the Attends relationship element instances with the values 4 and 6 for the non-interposed Attends element field grade and huddles against the Student entity element instance with the value Paul for the Student element field name. Figure 3.9 thus indicates that the student Paul attends the courses Program and Compiler, for which he receives the grades 6 and 4, respectively, and that he takes any written exams in English.

The program heap shown in Figure 3.9 comprises two Attends extent instances, one Student extent instance, and two Course extent instances. This setup reflects the fact that the courses are offered by two separate schools, a technical university and an art school, and that students can attend courses at both schools. The right Course extent instance denotes the art school’s extent instance and the left Course extent instance denotes the technical university’s extent instance. In Figure 3.9, Susan is the only student who attends courses at both schools. She attends the courses Program and Art, for which she receives the grades 5 and 6, respectively. The heap snapshot shown in Figure 3.9 further indicates that there exists a role element instance for each relationship extent instance in which an element instance participates. As a result, interposed members can be customized for relationship extent instances. In the heap snapshot shown in Figure 3.9, for example, Susan takes written exams in English at the technical university and in French at the art school.
Interposed members are encapsulated in their declaring relationships. As a result, different relationships can interpose members into the same participant type. Figure 3.10 shows a partial view of the university heap snapshot of Figure 3.9 from the perspective of the student Paul. In addition to instances of the \texttt{Attends} relationship, Figure 3.10 depicts also instances of the \texttt{Assists} relationship. For illustration purposes, we assume that relationship \texttt{Assists} also declares an interposed relationship element field \texttt{language} for the role \texttt{ta}. This field denotes the language a teaching assistant uses to hold exercise sessions. Even though relationships \texttt{Attends} and \texttt{Assists} interpose the field \texttt{language} into the same participant type, these declarations are not conflicting. At runtime, there exists a role element instance for each relationship type, and interposed fields are part of the role element instance and not part of the participant supertype instance. As a result, Paul can use a different language for holding exercise sessions (i.e., German) than for taking written exams (i.e., English).

The notion of a role has also received attention in other works. Whereas some works employ roles as purely conceptual notions for system [61] or framework [63] design, other works take the notion of a role further and provide explicit support for roles by a library [68] or by a programming language [67, 65, 66]. In all of these works, roles are granted first-class citizenship. In Rumer, in contrast, roles are implicit and tied to the re-
3.2 Language Concepts

Figure 3.10: Partial view of the university program heap shown in Figure 3.9 extended with relationship Assists. The graphic focuses on student Paul and indicates that different relationship types (i.e., Assists and Attends) can interpose equally named element fields (i.e., language) into the same participant type. See legend in Figure 3.9.

3.2.5 Specification language

In this section, we introduce the Rumer specification language. We focus on the main features of the Rumer specification language in this section and discuss aspects related to the verification of specifications in Chapter 4, Chapter 5, and Chapter 6.

The Rumer specification language supports Design-by-Contract-style [21] assertions as present in object-oriented contract languages, such as Eiffel [82], JML (Java Modeling Language) [83, 84], and Spec# [85]. A distinguishing feature of the Rumer specification language is its seamless integration with the Rumer programming language. Leveraging the query operators available in the Rumer programming language, set comprehensions and quantified expressions can be easily expressed as part of specifications. Furthermore, Rumer query expressions can be used as part of assertions since query expressions are side-effect free. As indicated by the Rumer grammar shown in Appendix A.1 on page 211, the Rumer specification language includes routine preconditions and routine postconditions (production routineSignatureTail), assert statements (production statement), and invariants (production invariantDecl). Invariants can be declared both for element types and extent types as well as for a Rumer program’s application, giving rise
to the following five invariant categories:

- **Entity element invariant**: Property that must hold for each element instance of the entity that declares the invariant.
- **Entity extent invariant**: Property that must hold for each extent instance of the entity that declares the invariant.
- **Relationship element invariant**: Property that must hold for each element instance of the relationship that declares the invariant.
- **Relationship extent invariant**: Property that must hold for each extent instance of the relationship that declares the invariant.
- **Application invariant**: Property that must hold for the singleton instance of the application that declares the invariant.

These invariant categories refine the categories introduced in earlier work [71]. Element and extent invariants correspond to value-based and structural invariants, respectively, in [71]. In addition, we support extent invariants for entities, for which only the declaration of value-based invariants is possible in [71].

Figure 3.11 shows an extended version of the Rumer Composite program in Figure 3.5. The new version introduces invariants, method preconditions and postconditions, and the interposed element field `total` (line 2). The interposed element field `total` of the *Parent* relationship indicates per parent role element instance the number of child role element instances it is directly or indirectly related to. This number must be equal to the number of children components contained within the sub-tree rooted at a parent component. The new version of the Composite program declares a relationship extent invariant for relationship *Parent* (line 21) and a relationship element invariant for relationship *Composite* (line 30). As indicated by production invariantDecl in Appendix A.1 on page 211, extent invariants are distinguished from element invariants by the keyword `extent`.

The extent invariant of relationship *Parent* leverages Rumer query expressions (see Section 3.2.3) and guarantees the following properties: (i) that every child component is related to at most one parent component (line 22), (ii) that the relation described by the current *Parent* extent instance is acyclic (line 23), and (iii) that the value of a parent component’s `total` field is equal to the number of children components to which the parent component is transitively related by the *Parent* relationship (line 24). Conjuncts (i) and (ii) nicely demonstrate how specifications can benefit from the abstractions available in the relational model underlying the Rumer language. Conjunct (i) refers to the invariant’s *Parent* extent instance and guarantees that the relation described by the extent instance forms a partial function. As indicated by production postfixExprTail in Appendix A.1 on page 211, the operator `isPartialFunction()` is a built-in query operator that evaluates to a boolean. Conjunct (ii) guarantees that the transitive closure of the relation described by the invariant’s *Parent* extent instance is irreflexive. The operators `transitiveClosure()` and `isIrreflexive()` are both built-in query operators (production postfixExprTail in Appendix A.1) and they return a set of instance
3.2 LANGUAGE CONCEPTS

relationship Parent participants (Component child, Component parent) {
    int >parent total; // interposed element field

    extent void append(Component c, Component p)
        requires // precondition
            c != null & p != null & c != p &
            !(c isElementOf these.child union these.parent) &
            !(these.isEmpty() => p isElementOf these.child union these.parent);
        ensures // postcondition
            these == old(these) union Set(Pair(c, p)) &
            forAll(x isElementOf these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.child == c).parent:
               x.total == old(x.total) + 1);
        {
            these.add(new Parent(c, p));
            foreach (x isElementOf these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.child == c).parent)
                { x.total = x.total + 1; }
        }

    extent invariant // extent invariant
        these.isPartialFunction() &
        these.transitiveClosure().isIrreflexive() &
        forAll(p isElementOf these.parent: p.total ==
               these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.parent == p).count());
}

relationship Composite participants (Component root, Extent<Parent> tree) {
    ...
    invariant // element invariant
        !(this.root isElementOf this.tree.child) &
        !(this.tree.isEmpty() => this.root isElementOf this.tree.parent) &
        this.tree.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.parent == this.root).child ==
            this.tree.child;
}

Figure 3.11: Rumer Composite program extending the version shown in Figure 3.5 with the interposed element field total as well as with invariants and method pre- and postconditions. See complete Composite pattern specification in Section 7.1.2 on page 193.

tuples and a boolean, respectively. Conjuncts (i) and (ii) guarantee that the relation described by a Parent extent instance forms a forest of trees. Conjunct (iii) uses the built-in universal quantifier forAll (production quantifiedPredicate in Appendix A.1). Rumer only supports bounded quantifiers. The forAll operator uses a lambda expression to restrict the range of the quantified lambda variable (left of the colon) as well as a lambda expression to specify the predicate of the quantifier (right of the colon). In the example, the lambda variable ranges over all parent role element instances contained in the invariant’s Parent extent instance. The predicate of the universal quantifier guarantees, for each parent role element instance, that its total field is equal to the number of Parent element instances that transitively relate a child role element instance to the parent role element instance. The built-in operator count() yields the number of element instances contained in the set on which the operator is invoked.

The extent invariant of relationship Parent does not yet guarantee that a composite’s
tree Parent extent instance indeed forms a tree, but also permits a forest. To restrict a Composite element instance’s tree Parent extent instance to a real tree, relationship Composite declares the following element invariant: (i) that a composite’s root component never appears as a child component in the relation described by the composite’s tree Parent extent instance (line 31), (ii) that a composite’s root component appears as a parent component in the relation described by the composite’s tree Parent extent instance, unless this relation is empty (line 32), and (iii) that a composite’s root component is the transitive parent component of all children components of the relation described by the composite’s tree Parent extent instance (line 33). Conjunct (iii) uses again the transitiveClosure() operator to compute the transitive closure of the relation described by the composite’s tree Parent extent instance. From the resulting relation, conjunct (iii) chooses those Parent relationship instances that have the composite’s root component as a parent component and projects onto their children components. Those children components have to be exactly the children components of a composite’s tree Parent extent instance. The element invariant of relationship Composite thus guarantees that a composite has a unique root and that a composite’s root component is the same as the one at the top of a composite’s tree. As indicated by production postfix-ExprTail in Appendix A.1 on page 211, the operator isEmpty() is a built-in query operator that evaluates to a boolean, indicating whether the set on which the operator is invoked is empty or not.

The heap snapshot shown in Figure 3.7 represents a valid instantiation of the Composite pattern specification in Figure 3.11. The displayed Composite element instances all have tree Parent extent instances that form proper trees. As illustrated by Figure 3.7, it is possible for a Component element instance to be part of different Parent extent instances. For example, the two shadow element instances connected to the sixth Component element instance in Figure 3.7 indicate that the sixth Component element instance is part of both Parent extent instances shown in Figure 3.7. The sharing of Component element instances among different Parent extent instances does not compromise Parent’s extent invariant. Extent invariants must only hold for each extent instance but not for the union of all extent instances.

To guarantee the Composite pattern invariants listed in Figure 3.11, the methods of the Rumer Composite pattern program define preconditions and postconditions. We briefly illustrate the most important features of method preconditions and postconditions based on the preconditions and postconditions of method append() (see line 5 and line 9, resp. in Figure 3.11). By appending the argument component c as child of the argument component p, method append() may compromise the extent invariant of Parent. To prevent introducing cycles and relating a child component to several parent components, the method requires the following precondition:

\[ c \neq p \land \neg (c \text{ isElementOf these.child union these.parent}) \]

As indicated by production expression in Appendix A.1 on page 211, the operator union

\[ \text{union} \]

Note that Figure 3.7 does not display Parent’s interposed element field total.
is a built-in query operator that yields the union of its left and right operand sets. Method
append() further increments the total field of all transitive parent components of the
child component c and thus ensures the following postcondition:

\[
\forall x \text{ isElementOf these.transitiveClosure}. \text{select}(cp: cp.child == c).parent:
\quad x.total == \text{old}(x.total) + 1
\]

The old() operator is a language built-in operator (production primaryExpr in Ap-
pendix A.1 on page 211), which can only occur in routine postconditions. It captures
the value of the argument expression in the pre-state of the routine invocation in whose
postcondition the operator occurs.

Rumer is the only relationship-based programming language that supports Design-by-
Contract-style [21] assertions. However, there exist a number of object-oriented con-
tract languages that support Design-by-Contract-style [21] assertions, such as Eiffel [82],
JML (Java Modeling Language) [83, 84], and Spec7 [85]. The individual contract lan-
guages vary in range of supported assertions. JML is the object-oriented contract lan-
guage that supports the richest range of assertions. For example, it supports not only
instance invariants (a.k.a. object invariants) but also static invariants. Also, JML features
list comprehensions and quantified expressions. An extension of the Spec7 methodology
with static (including quantified) invariants is discussed in [86], but not yet integrated
into the Spec7 programming system. Extent invariants are related to static invariants in
that they are decoupled from an individual instance and support quantified expressions.
In contrast to JML, the Rumer specification language relies on a stratified programming
model (see Chapter 4), which allows certain invariants to be broken in initial and final
states of method executions, and also imposes different admissibility criteria on invariant
declarations. Furthermore, Rumer supports a richer range of assertions than JML. Lever-
aging the abstractions of the relational model underlying the Rumer language, the Rumer
specification language provides support not only for set comprehensions and quantified
expressions but also for the full range of discrete mathematics operators (e.g., set union,
Cartesian product, composition, transitive closure, etc.). The notion of an extent has also
proved viable for quantified expressions. In Rumer, quantified variables can only range
over instances contained in an extent instance. This treatment avoids the problem of
quantifying over possibly non-allocated objects [87].

### 3.3 Type system

In this section, we introduce the types of the Rumer language and the subtyping relations
between them.

#### 3.3.1 Types

Figure 3.12 lists the types of the Rumer language. These types correspond to the source
types listed in Appendix A.1 on page 211 that can occur as part of type declarations in the
Figure 3.12: Rumer programming language types. These types constitute the complete set of Rumer types. Some of the types listed above are only used internally for type checking and cannot appear in the source text. See Appendix A.1 on page 211 for the types that can appear in the source text.

Rumer program text. A comparison of the source types listed in Appendix A.1 and the types listed in Figure 3.12 reveals that, in some cases, the naming of a type is different for source types and internal types. In the case of element type declarations, the identifier Element is dropped for source types. For example, the type of the local variables root1 and root2 on line 22 in Figure 3.5 is Element<Component>, which is represented in the Rumer source text as Component. Furthermore, such a comparison reveals that the source types are a subset of the internal types. Figure 3.12 also includes types that are only used for type checking purposes internally (e.g., Mold<RelationshipName.RoleName>) but that cannot appear in the source text.

The Rumer types are divided into reference types (ReferenceType in Figure 3.12), value types (ValueType in Figure 3.12), and singleton types (SingletonType in Figure 3.12). Whereas multiple instances of reference types and value types may exist, there only exists a single instance of a singleton type. The application declaration of a Rumer program gives rise to a singleton type, of which an instance is generated by the run-time system. Both reference types and value type are based on nominal types (NominalType in Figure 3.12) that subsume all programmer-definable entity and relationship declarations. As opposed to value types, reference types have a unique, system-generated identity. As a result, reference types are compared by identity ("by reference") and value types are compared structurally. Since the particular kind of comparison is type-dependent, Rumer only supports a single comparison operator, which is the ‘==’ operator.

Reference types are either element types (ElementType in Figure 3.12) or extent types (ExtentType in Figure 3.12). As pointed out in Section 3.2.2, element and extent types arise from entity or relationship declarations. Whereas an entity or relationship element type subsumes the element members of an entity or relationship declaration, an entity or relationship extent type subsumes the extent members of an entity or relation-
ship declaration. For example, entity **Student** in Figure 3.8 gives rise to the following two types: `Element<Student>` and `Extent<Student>`. Type `Element<Student>` has the element field **name**. Due to member interposition (see Section 3.2.4), relationship declarations result in two kinds of element types: one denoting the relationship element type `Element<RelationshipName>` and one denoting the role element type of a relationship participant `Element<RelationshipName.RoleName>`. For example, relationship **Attends** in Figure 3.8 brings about the element types `Element<Attends>`, `Element<Attends.learner>`, and `Element<Attends.course>`. Furthermore, it gives rise to the extent type `Extent<Attends>`. Type `Element<Attends>` has the element field **grade** and the element method `print()`. Type `Element<Attends.learner>` has the element field **language** and the element method `print()`. In addition to the programmer-defined element types, the Rumer language includes the element type constant **Any**, which serves as the supertype of every element type (see also Section 3.3.2).

Value types are either set types (SetType in Figure 3.12), pair types (PairType in Figure 3.12), bag types (BagType in Figure 3.12), or item types (ItemType in Figure 3.12). The **set type** is used in the typing of query expressions that evaluate to a subset of the extent type or set type instance on which the query operator is invoked. For example, assuming the variable `Extent<Student> ethStudents` and the Rumer university program shown in Figure 3.8, the query expression

```java
ethStudents.select(s: s.name == "Heidi")
```

yields all students with the name “Heidi” comprised in the target extent instance and is of type `Set<Element<Student>>`. As opposed to extents, which are mutable reference types and can be explicitly instantiated and populated by programmers, sets are immutable value types and can only be generated by querying extent or set instances.

The **pair type** closes the type system under set and relational operators. For example, assuming the variables `Extent<Attends> ethAttends` and `Extent<Assists> ethAssists` and the Rumer university program shown in Figure 3.3, the query expression

```java
ethAttends union ethAssists
```

yields the union of the students-course pairs comprised in the two operand extent instances and is of type `Set<Pair<Element<Student>, Element<Course>>>`.

Both set types and pair types have **coordinate types** (CoordinateType in Figure 3.12) as their elements and coordinates, respectively. The name CoordinateType shall convey the idea that such a type can only be a "coordinate" of a set or pair. Coordinate types subsume element types, extent types, set types, and pair types. Extent types may appear as coordinate types of a set or pair since extent instances can be participants of relationship element instances. Furthermore, the inclusion of the set type and pair type allows for recursive set and pair definitions, respectively.

The **bag type** is analogous to the bag types present in relational database management systems [35] that result from projections [70] onto relations. For example, assuming
the variable `Extent<Student> ethStudents` and the Rumer university program shown in Figure 3.8, the query expression

```
ethStudents.name
```
yields a bag of strings indicating the name of every student contained in the target extent instance, and is of type `Bag<string>`.

As opposed to extents and sets, whose elements are distinct, the elements contained in a bag may occur a (finite) number of times. Rumer bags are thus equivalent to the bags (or multisets) of set theory. To emphasize the distinction between extents and sets, on the one hand, and bags, on the other hand, we call the elements of sets "elements" and the elements of bags "items". The distinctness of extent and set elements is due to the identity of their elements (or of the elements they are based on). Bag items, on the other hand, are confined to value types and thus they do not have identity. Both extent and set instances as well as bag instances can be empty.

The item type subsumes mold types (`MoldType` in Figure 3.12) and primitive types (`PrimitiveType` in Figure 3.12), whose instances can both appear as bag items. The Rumer primitive types are analogous to the Java primitive types, with the exception that Rumer treats strings as immutable value types and that it does not support the declaration of memory size requirements for numerical types. A mold type, on the other hand, is conceptually similar to a delayed type [88] because it represents an incompletely initialized "element instance". A mold type exists for each programmer-defined element type and has a field for each of the element type’s element fields. Unlike an element type, a mold type is a value type and does not have identity. For example, the argument expression `new Parent(c, p)` on line 15 in Figure 3.11 is of type `Mold<Parent>` and represents a newly instantiated `Parent` mold instance that has the `Component` element instances referred to by `c` and `p` as participants. We detail our motivation to introduce mold types and further benefits in Section 3.4.1.

We find it further convenient to introduce the notion of a base type, allowing us to abstract from the fact whether an instance is an element or an extent instance:

**Definition 3.1 (Base type):** For any application type `App`, any relationship type `R` with participant nominal types `A a` and `B b`, and any entity type `E`, a base type of an instance `o` is defined as:

```
BaseType(o) = \begin{cases} 
    App & \text{if } o \text{ is of type } App, \\
    R & \text{if } o \text{ is of type extent} \langle \text{Element}(R) \rangle, \text{Element}(R), \text{Element}(R.a), \\
    & \quad \text{Element}(R.b), \text{or Mold}(R). \\
    E & \text{if } o \text{ is of type extent} \langle \text{Element}(E) \rangle, \text{Element}(E), \text{or Mold}(E). 
\end{cases}
```

The notion of a base type is particularly helpful if we want to refer to a relationship element instance’s participating instances without knowing whether those instances are element instances or extent instances. As we discuss in Chapter 4, the base type of an instance also indicates the stratification layer of an instance.
3.3 Subtyping

Figure 3.13 details the subtyping relations between the Rumer language types discussed in the previous section. The first four subtyping rules SUB-ROLE1, SUB-ROLE2, SUB-ROLE3, and SUB-ROLE4 capture the subtyping relations induced by member interposition. The rules indicate that both role types of a relationship are subtypes of their corresponding participant types. As already pointed out in Section 3.2.4, interposed members do not override any equally named members of their participant supertype and are not dynamically dispatched. The subtyping rule SUB-ENTITY-ANY guarantees that every programmer-defined entity element type conforms to Any. Any is a type constant that is the maximal element of the subtyping relation defined on element types. The subtyping rules SUB-RELATIONSHIP-PAIR and SUB-PAIR-ANY guarantee that also programmer-defined relationship element types conform to Any. The subtyping rule SUB-RELATIONSHIP-PAIR guarantees that every relationship element instance conforms to a pair type instance with the corresponding role element instances of the relationship element instance as participants. The subtyping rule SUB-PAIR-DEPTH establishes depth subtyping for pairs. This rule makes the pair type constructor covariant with its coordinate types. Since the pair type is an immutable value type, covariance for pair types can be soundly supported. The subtyping rule SUB-EXTENT-SET guarantees that an instance of an extent type conforms to a corresponding set type instance that has the same element type as the extent type instance. Furthermore, this subtyping rule ensures that all query operators applicable to set instances are also applicable to extent instances. The subtyping rule SUB-COVSET makes the set type constructor covariant with its element type. Again, this subtyping rule does not compromise type soundness since the set type is an immutable value type. The differentiation between extent types and set types is similar to the type constructors Sink and Source described in [89, 90], which separate the writing to and reading of a type instance, respectively. Unlike the Sink type constructor, however, the extent type constructor is invariant. The subtyping rule SUB-COVBAG makes also the bag type constructor covariant with its item type. Again, this subtyping rule does not compromise type soundness since the bag type is an immutable value type. The subtyping rule SUB-INT-FLOAT allows for widening conversions between numeric primitive type instances. The last two subtyping rules SUB-REFLX and SUB-TRANS, finally, close the subtyping rules under transitivity and reflexivity, establishing a partial order on the subtyping relation.

We illustrate the subtyping rules in Figure 3.13 on the typing of the query expression

\[ \text{ethAttends union ethAssists} \]

that was introduced in the previous section. To determine the type of the query expression, we must determine the least common supertype of the operand expressions ethAttends and ethAssists. The types of the operand expressions ethAttends and ethAssists are Extent(Element(Attends)) and Extent(Element(Assists)), respectively. To determine the least common supertype of these operand types, we simultaneously “climb up” the subtyping relation for both operand types. Applying the rule
Figure 3.13: Subtyping relation between Rumer language types. The meta-variables A and B range over entity or relationship names and the meta-variables S, T, U, and V range over type names. See Figure 3.12 for the Rumer language types.
3.4 Semantics

In this section, we detail the semantics of the Rumer built-in operators. The implementation of those built-in operators guarantees, in particular, that entity and relationship element instances reside in an extent instance and that those extent instances are disjoint. The disjointness of extent instances leads to a partitioning of the Rumer program heap, which is leveraged by the verification technique introduced in Chapter 5. Furthermore, the implementation of the Rumer query operators guarantees that query expressions in Rumer are side-effect free, thus making them predicates over the program heap.

3.4.1 Instance instantiation and initialization

Rumer provides a number of built-in operators for the instantiation and initialization of mold types, element types, and extent types.

Elements and molds

Element type instances in Rumer can only be created from corresponding mold type instances. This restriction enforces a strict instantiation and initialization pattern: to create an element instance of type Element\langle A\rangle, a programmer first creates an instance of the corresponding mold type Mold\langle A\rangle, (successively) initializes the mold instance, and then creates the element instance by providing the mold instance as a template. As briefly mentioned in Section 3.3.1, mold types are inspired by delayed types \[88\] and represent partially initialized “element instances”. A mold type exists for each programmer-defined element type and has a field for each of the element type’s element fields. Representing the two distinct phases of the life cycle of an element instance — its creation and initialization phase as opposed to its operational phase — at the level of the type system has a number of advantages. Most importantly, it facilitates a separate treatment of partially initialized “element instances” and (supposedly) fully initialized element instances at compile-time. For example, as we detail in Chapter 5, only element instances are expected to meet the element invariants of their nominal type, but not mold instances.

Mold instances are created by using the Rumer built-in mold constructors (see Table 3.14 and Table 3.16). Mold constructors exist for the creation of entity mold instances and relationship mold instances. Although the Rumer type system includes also a role mold type (\texttt{Mold\langle RelationshipName.RoleName\rangle} in Figure 3.12), role mold types are not explicitly instantiated by the programmer.

As detailed by Table 3.14, a mold instance of an entity type \texttt{E} is created by calling the built-in entity mold constructor \texttt{new E()}. The entity mold constructor creates an instance of type \texttt{Mold\langle E\rangle}, initializes all fields of the newly created mold instance with default values, and returns the mold instance. If default initialization is not appropriate, a programmer can customize mold initialization by declaring a mold initializer.
Operator for an entity E

\[
\text{new } E() \quad \text{Return:} \quad \text{Mold}(E) \ e \\
\text{Description:} \quad \text{Creates an instance } e \text{ of type Mold}(E), \text{ initializes } e\text{'s fields with default values, and returns } e. \\
\text{Postcondition:} \quad e \text{ has all fields initialized with default values.}
\]

Table 3.14: Built-in entity mold constructor.

```java
entity Student {
  string name;
  int id;
  string language;

  init initialize(string name, int id) { // mold initializer
    this.name = name;
    this.id = id;
  }

  init setLanguage(string language) { // mold initializer
    this.language = language;
  }

  extent void createStudent(string name, int id, string language) {
    Student.add(new Student().initialize(name, id).setLanguage(language));
  }
}
```

Figure 3.15: Student entity of Rumer university program (see Figure 3.3) augmented with further element fields and mold initializer declarations.

A mold initializer is a programmer-defined routine for the initialization of mold fields. Figure 3.15 displays a revised declaration of the Student entity of the Rumer university program shown in Figure 3.3. Entity `Student` declares the two mold initializers `initialize()` (line 6) and `setLanguage()` (line 11). As indicated by production `moldInitializerDecl` in Appendix A.1 on page 211, mold initializers are denoted by the `init` keyword, which precedes the name of the mold initializer. Mold initializers can only be invoked on mold instances and they return a mold instance. Since molds are value types, a mold initializer creates a copy of the current mold receiver instance, on which it executes the body of the mold initializer and which it finally returns. The mold initializers `initialize()` and `setLanguage()` are invoked on line 16 in Figure 3.15. The invocations demonstrate that several initializers can be invoked in succession. The separation between mold constructors and mold initializers is more a matter of convenience than necessity. By separating mold instantiation from mold initialization — as opposed to combining the two by constructor overloading — incremental initialization becomes possible. For example, the fields of several mold instances can be equally initialized by using the same mold instance as the initial target of the successive initializer invocations.

The instantiation and initialization of relationship mold instances is similar to the one of entity mold instances. Table 3.16 lists the built-in Rumer `relationship mold constructor`. Whereas entity mold constructors do not take any arguments, relationship mold construc-

66
Operator for a relationship \( R \) with participant base types \( A \) and \( B \)

\[
\text{new } R()
\]

1. argument: \( \text{Element}(A) \) or \( \text{Extent}(\text{Element}(A)) \)
2. argument: \( \text{Element}(B) \) or \( \text{Extent}(\text{Element}(B)) \)

Return: \( \text{Mold}(R) \)

Description: Creates the instances \( r, ra, \) and \( rb \) of type \( \text{Mold}(R) \), \( \text{Mold}(R.a) \), and \( \text{Mold}(R.b) \), respectively, such that \( r \) relates \( ra \) to \( rb \) and such that \( ra \) refers to \( a \) and \( rb \) refers to \( b \). Initializes the fields of \( r, ra \), and \( rb \) with default values and returns \( r \).

Precondition: \( a \) and \( b \) must refer to existing instances.
Postcondition: \( r \) has all fields initialized with default values and relates \( ra \) to \( rb \). \( ra \) has all fields initialized with default values and refers to \( a \). \( rb \) has all fields initialized with default values and refers to \( b \).

\[
\text{new } R()
\]

1. argument: \( \text{Set}(\text{Element}(A)) \) or \( \text{Set}(\text{Extent}(\text{Element}(A))) \)
2. argument: \( \text{Element}(B) \) or \( \text{Extent}(\text{Element}(B)) \)

Return: \( \text{Bag}(\text{Mold}(R)) \)

Description: For every instance \( a \) in \( x \), invoke \( \text{new } R(a, b) \).

Precondition: \( a \) must not be empty, \( b \) must refer to an existing instance.
Postcondition: Postcondition of first variant holds analogously for each instance in \( z \).

\[
\text{new } R()
\]

1. argument: \( \text{Set}(\text{Element}(A)) \) or \( \text{Set}(\text{Extent}(\text{Element}(A))) \)
2. argument: \( \text{Set}(\text{Element}(B)) \) or \( \text{Set}(\text{Extent}(\text{Element}(B))) \)

Return: \( \text{Bag}(\text{Mold}(R)) \)

Description: For every instance \( a \) in \( x \) and for every instance \( b \) in \( y \), invoke \( \text{new } R(a, b) \).

Precondition: \( a \) and \( b \) must not be empty.
Postcondition: Postcondition of first variant holds analogously for each instance in \( z \).

Table 3.16: Built-in relationship mold constructor. Overloaded variants with permuted argument types are not shown, but supported analogously.

...
Operator for an entity E

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Target:</th>
<th>Argument:</th>
<th>Return:</th>
<th>Description:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add()</td>
<td>Extent(Element(E)) t</td>
<td>Mold(E) m</td>
<td>Element(E) e</td>
<td>Creates a unique instance e of type Element(E), initializes e’s fields with m’s field values, adds e to t, and returns e.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Precondition: m’s fields must satisfy the invariant of Element(E).
Postcondition: e is unique, has the same field values as m, satisfies its invariant, and resides in t.

Table 3.17: Built-in entity addition operator.

Mold(E) as argument. It creates a unique entity element instance e of type Element(E), initializes e’s fields with the field values of the argument mold instance m, adds e to the target extent instance t, and returns e. As a precondition, the add() operator requires that the field values of the argument entity mold instance m satisfy the invariant of Element(E). As a result, the add() operator guarantees that the newly created entity element instance e satisfies its invariant.

The instantiation of relationship element instances is similar to the instantiation of entity element instances. Table 3.18 lists the built-in Rumer relationship addition operator. There exist two overloaded variants of the operator: one taking a relationship mold instance as an argument and one taking a bag of relationship mold instances as an argument. We review the semantics of the relationship addition operator based on the first variant; the explanations apply analogously to the second variant. A relationship element instance of type Element(R) is created by invoking the built-in add() operator on a relationship extent instance t of type Extent(Element(R)). The add() operator takes a relationship mold instance mr of type Mold(R) as argument. It creates a unique relationship element instance r of type Element(R), initializes r’s fields with the field values of the argument mold instance mr, adds r to the target extent instance t, and returns r. Furthermore, the operator checks, for each role mold instance mr.a and mr.b referred to by mr, whether a corresponding role element instance needs to be instantiated. This is the case whenever there does not yet exist a corresponding role element instance that is related by a relationship element instance that resides in the target extent instance t. In this case, a unique instance ra or rb of the corresponding role element type Element(R.a) or Element(R.b), respectively, is created, initialized with the field values of the corresponding mold instance, and related to the same instance as the one referred to by the corresponding mold instance. Finally, the operator relates the newly created relationship element instance r to its corresponding, possibly newly created, role element instances ra and rb. Besides expecting the field values of the mold instances mr, mr.a, and mr.b to satisfy the invariant of Element(R), a relationship addition operator requires that there must not exist an instance Element(R) r’ in the target extent instance t that relates the instances referred to by mr.a and mr.b. The latter requirement guarantees that a relationship element instance is identified by its participating instances (see System Invariant 3.4 below).

The instantiation and initialization pattern enforced by the Rumer built-in language op-
### Operator for a relationship R with participant base types A and B

**add()**

**Target:** Extent(Element(R)) \( t \)

**Argument:** Mold(R) \( mr \)

**Return:** Element(R) \( r \)

**Description:** Creates a unique instance \( r \) of type Element(R), initializes \( r \)'s fields with \( mr \)'s field values, and adds \( r \) to \( t \). If there exists an instance Element(R,a) \( ra \) that is referred to by an instance in \( t \) and that refers to the same instance of BaseType(a) \( a \) as \( mr.a \), then relates \( r \) to \( ra \) and updates \( ra \)'s fields with \( mr.a \)'s field values. Otherwise, creates a unique instance \( ra \) of type Element(R,a), initializes \( ra \)'s fields with \( mr.a \)'s field values, and relates \( ra \) to the instance referred to by \( mr.a \) as well as \( r \) to \( ra \). If there exists an instance Element(R,b) \( rb \) that is referred to by an instance in \( t \) and that refers to the same instance of BaseType(b) \( b \) as \( mr.b \), then relates \( r \) to \( rb \) and updates \( rb \)'s fields with \( mr.b \)'s field values. Otherwise, creates a unique instance \( rb \) of type Element(R,b), initializes \( rb \)'s fields with \( mr.b \)'s field values, and relates \( rb \) to the instance referred to by \( mr.b \) as well as \( r \) to \( rb \). Returns \( r \).

**Precondition:** The fields of \( mr \), \( mr.a \), and \( mr.b \) must satisfy the invariant of Element(R) and \( mr.a \) and \( mr.b \) must refer to existing instances. There must not yet exist an instance Element(R) \( r' \) in \( t \) that relates the instances referred to by \( mr.a \) and \( mr.b \).

**Postcondition:** \( r \) is unique, relates \( ra \) to \( rb \), has the same field values as \( mr \), satisfies its invariant, and resides in \( t \). \( ra \) and \( rb \) are both unique and have the same fields values as \( mr.a \) and \( mr.b \), resp.

**add()**

**Target:** Extent(Element(R)) \( t \)

**Argument:** Bag(Mold(R)) \( x \)

**Return:** Set(Element(R)) \( z \)

**Description:** For every instance \( mr \) in \( x \), invoke \( t.add(mr) \).

**Precondition:** Precondition of first variant must hold analogously for each instance in \( x \).

**Postcondition:** Postcondition of first variant holds analogously for each instance in \( z \).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3.18: Built-in relationship addition operator.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Operators for element instances gives rise to a number of system invariants. The fact that entity and relationship elements can only be instantiated by adding a mold instance to a corresponding extent instance (see Table 3.14 and Table 3.16) establishes the following system invariant:

**System Invariant 3.2 (Element containment):** Consider an entity or relationship type T. For every element instance \( t \) of type Extent(T), there exists an extent instance \( tx \) of type Extent(Element(T)) such that \( t \) resides in \( tx \).

System Invariant 3.2 guarantees that an existing entity or relationship element instance always resides in an extent instance. As a result, query expressions in Rumer only quantify over allocated instances (see also discussion in Section 3.2.3). This restriction combined with the availability of mold types for instance initialization guarantees that programmers are given a chance to properly initialize instances before querying them.

The postconditions of the entity and relationship addition operators (see Table 3.17 and Table 3.18) guarantee to create new element instances that are unique. These postconditions establish the following system invariant:
System Invariant 3.3 (Element distinctness): Consider an entity or relationship type $T$ and an extent instance $tx$ of type Extent$<\text{Element}(T)>$. The element instances that reside in $tx$ are distinct. Furthermore, if $T$ is a relationship type, then, for any of its role types $T.ab$ and for any two element instances $t_1$ and $t_2$ residing in $tx$, the role element instances $t_1.ab$ and $t_2.ab$ are distinct, unless they refer to the same participating instance.

The precondition of the relationship addition operator (see Table 3.18) further establishes the following system invariant:

System Invariant 3.4 (Relationship element weak identity): Consider a relationship type $R$ with the participant base types $A$ and $B$ and consider an extent instance $rx$ of type Extent$<\text{Element}(R)>$. For any element instance $r$ that reside in $rx$ and its participating instances $a$ and $b$ of BaseType$(A)$ and BaseType$(B)$, respectively, if there exists an element instance $r'$ that reside in $rx$ and that also has the participating instances $a$ and $b$, then $r'$ must be $r$.

System Invariant 3.4 guarantees that a relationship element instance is uniquely identified by the extent instance in which it resides and by its participating instances. This requirement is in line with Invariant 2 in RelJ [3].

Extents

Extent instances are created by using the Rumer built-in extent constructors (see Table 3.19 and Table 3.20). Unlike the creation of element instances, the creation of extent instances is not based on mold types. Rumer does not support “meta” extents for extent instances, to coalesce the existing extent instances of a type. As a result, extent instances are not retrievable by queries, and the indirection of a mold is not necessary to guarantee that extent instances are properly initialized upon instantiation and before retrieval. As detailed by Table 3.19, an entity extent instance of type Extent$<\text{Element}(E)>$ is created by invoking the built-in entity extent constructor new Extent$<E>()$. The constructor creates a unique, empty entity extent instance $ex$ of type Extent$<\text{Element}(E)>$, initializes $ex$'s fields with default values, and returns $ex$. The creation of a relationship extent instance is analogous and detailed in Table 3.20. An extent constructor must guarantee that the newly created and returned extent instance satisfies its invariant. Depending on the concrete extent invariant declaration, customized initialization of extent fields and customized extent population may be necessary. To this end, programmers are allowed to overload default extent constructors.

Entity extent constructors and relationship extent constructors (see Table 3.19 and Table 3.20) guarantee that extent instances are distinct:

System Invariant 3.5 (Extent distinctness): Consider an entity or relationship type $T$. The extent instances of type Extent$<\text{Element}(T)>$ are distinct.

---

3Note, however, that RelJ only supports singleton extents
3.4 SEMANTICS

Operator for an entity E

\[
\text{new Extent}\langle E \rangle() \quad \text{Return:} \quad \text{Extent(}\text{Element(}E \text{)}\text{)} \text{ ex}
\]

Description: Creates a unique instance \(\text{ex}\) of type \(\text{Extent(}\text{Element(}E \text{)}\text{)}\), initializes \(\text{ex}'\text{s fields with default values, and returns } \text{ex}.\)

Postcondition: \(\text{ex}\) is unique, empty, has all fields initialized with default values, and satisfies its invariant.

Table 3.19: Built-in default entity extent constructor.

Operator for a relationship R with participant base types A a and B b

\[
\text{new Extent}\langle R \rangle() \quad \text{Return:} \quad \text{Extent(}\text{Element(}R \text{)}\text{)} \text{ rx}
\]

Description: Creates a unique instance \(\text{rx}\) of type \(\text{Extent(}\text{Element(}R \text{)}\text{)}\), initializes \(\text{rx}'\text{s fields with default values, and returns } \text{rx}.\)

Postcondition: \(\text{rx}\) is unique, empty, has all fields initialized with default values, and satisfies its invariant.

Table 3.20: Built-in default relationship extent constructor.

The addition operators (see Table 3.17 and Table 3.18) are the only operators to populate extent instances and to instantiate role element instances. Since those operators only accept mold instances as arguments (as opposed to element instances), it is impossible to add or associate the same element instance or role element instance, respectively, multiple times to/with the same or a different extent instance. As a result, the following system invariant holds:

**System Invariant 3.6 (Extent disjointness):** Consider an entity or relationship type \(T\). The extent instances of type \(\text{Extent(}\text{Element(}T \text{)}\text{)}\) are pairwise disjoint. Furthermore, if \(T\) is a relationship type, then, for any of its role types \(T.ab\) and for any two element instances \(t_1\) and \(t_2\) of type \(\text{Element(}T \text{)}\), the role element instances \(t_1.ab\) and \(t_2.ab\) can only be the same if \(t_1\) and \(t_2\) reside in the same extent instance.

System Invariant 3.6 guarantees, together with System Invariant 3.2 and System Invariant 3.3, that 
(i) an entity or relationship element instance resides in exactly one extent instance, 
(ii) that a role element instance is associated with exactly one extent instance, and 
(iii) that an element instance (entity, relationship, or role) is unique across extent instances.

3.4.2 Instance destruction

As opposed to mold instances and extent instances, element instances can be “retrieved” based on the values of their fields by issuing an appropriate query. The existence of references to an element instance is thus not the right criterion to decide whether an element instance will be accessed in the future. As a result, element instances have to be deleted manually by the programmer. Mold instances and extent instances, on the other hand, are automatically reclaimed by a garbage collector.
The Rumer programming language provides built-in removal operators (see Table 3.21 and Table 3.22) for the destruction of element instances. As detailed by Table 3.21 and Table 3.22, an element instance is destructed by removing the instance from the target extent instance in which the element instance resides. The element instance to-be destructed is passed as an argument to the removal operator. Both the entity removal operator and the relationship removal operator accept as arguments element instances and sets of element instances of the entity or relationship, respectively. In addition, the relationship removal operator allows the destruction of a relationship element instance by indicating its participating instances.

The Rumer built-in removal operators do have a non-strict execution semantics. To prevent a relationship element instance from relating nonexistent instances, an instance is only destructed once it participates no longer in any relationship. An invocation of remove() on an extent instance \(t_x\) of type \(\text{Extent} \langle \text{Element} \langle T \rangle \rangle\) requiring the destruction of the element instance \(t\) of type \(\text{Element} \langle T \rangle\) will mark the element instance \(t\) as “to be scheduled for deletion”. For an entity or relationship element instance, “to be scheduled for deletion” means that the instance will be destructed as soon as there no longer exists any relationship element instance in which the instance participates. For a role element instance, “to be scheduled for deletion” means that the role element instance will be destructed as soon as all its associated relationship element instances are destructed. This treatment guarantees that a role element instance exists as long as there exists at least one relationship element instance of which the role element instance is a participant. The non-strict execution semantics of the removal operators requires programmers to unfold removal operations in a top-down manner, starting at the to be deleted element instance of which all remaining to be deleted element instances are transitive participants.

Mold instances and extent instances, on the other hand, are automatically reclaimed by a garbage collector. Mold instances are reclaimed if they are no longer reachable. Extent instances are reclaimed if they are no longer referred to by a variable or no longer participate in a relationship element instance and if none of the extent instance’s element instances participate in a relationship element instance. The collection of an extent instance results not only in the destruction of the extent instance itself but also in the destruction of any element instances comprised in the extent instance. As a result, a form of
that refer to "garbage" objects. Furthermore, both Vaziri et al. [55] and Nelson et al. [57]
intercept the garbage collector to reclaim linkages and relation type tuples, respectively,
participating objects and key objects, respectively, and the underlying implementations
leaks association, linkages and relation type tuples use weak references to refer to their
falsely rely on automatic garbage collection for instance destruction. To prevent memory
in the context of defining object identity based on relation types. These works essen-
tially rely on automatic collection for instance destruction. To prevent memory
leaks association, linkages and relation type tuples use weak references to refer to their
participating objects and key objects, respectively, and the underlying implementations
intercept the garbage collector to reclaim linkages and relation type tuples, respectively,
that refer to “garbage” objects. Furthermore, both Vaziri et al. [55] and Nelson et al. [57]
support the notion of a scope and space, respectively, to prevent the accidental collection of relation type tuples whose identity relies on primitive types only. A scope (or space) is conceptually similar to an extent instance since tuples residing in a scope cannot be collected as long as the containing scope is referenced.

The postconditions of the removal operators (see Table 3.21 and Table 3.22) guarantee that an element instance will not be removed as long as it participates in a relationship element instance. As a result, the following system invariant holds:

**System Invariant 3.7 (Referential integrity):** Consider a relationship type R with the participant base types A and B. For any element instance r of type Element(R), there exist two instances a and b of BaseType(A) and BaseType(B), respectively, which r relates.

### 3.4.3 Heap querying

The fact that Rumer query expressions have a non-strict evaluation semantics and are side-effect free (see Section 3.2.3) gives rise to the following system invariant:

**System Invariant 3.8 (Predicate semantics):** Consider a query expression x or a variable x bound to a query expression by call-by-name. Upon each read of x, the returned value is equal to the evaluation of the query expression in the state of the program heap at the time of reading x.

System Invariant 3.8 thus guarantees that query expressions or query variables become true predicates over the extents they are applied to.
The Matryoshka principle

The Rumer programming language embodies a modularization discipline that we summarize as the Matryoshka Principle. We name the principle after the Russian nesting dolls since it leads to a stratification of Rumer programming language abstractions. Based on this stratification, the principle defines admissibility criteria that stipulate restrictions on writes to locations, the expression of invariants, and routine invocations. In this chapter, we first discuss the rationale underlying the Matryoshka Principle and its embodiment in the Rumer programming language (Section 4.1). Then, we introduce the stratification caused by the Matryoshka Principle (Section 4.2), discuss the imposed admissibility criteria (Section 4.3), and conclude with a discussion of the principle’s underlying design decisions and its connection to object ownership (Section 4.4).

4.1 Rationale

An important aim of the design of the Rumer programming language is to facilitate the modular verification of Rumer programs. A modular verification technique allows Rumer entity and relationship declarations to be verified independently from each other and is crucial for scaling the verification technique to real-world seized programs.

To facilitate modular verification, a programming language has to provide strong encapsulation guarantees. In particular, it should be possible to modularly reason about state changes of an instance and to modularly determine the invariants that are vulnerable to the execution of a routine. Invariants can be violated by writing to the instance on which the invariant is imposed. Traditionally [82, 21, 10, 16], a routine is allowed to invalidate its receiver instance’s invariant for the duration of the routine execution. Such a regime facilitates data type induction [20, 91, 92] as a proof technique: each routine may assume that the invariant holds in the routine’s initial state, provided that each routine ensures that the invariant holds in the routine’s final state. However, as pointed out by Huizing and Kuiper [11], data type induction cannot be soundly adopted for routines that potentially lead to a call-back. A call-back occurs if a routine r(), executing on an instance o, invokes either directly or transitively (by further routine invocations) a routine t() on the original instance o. Since t() re-enters o in a state in which the invariant of o may be temporarily...
broken, \( t() \) cannot soundly assume \( o' \)'s invariant in \( t() \)'s initial state.

To restore data type induction soundness, a programming language must either prevent call-backs or its verification technique must impose additional proof obligations on the caller of a routine. These obligations require the calling routine \( r() \) to re-establish, before the invocation, the invariants of its possibly transitive receiver instances whose invariants are vulnerable to \( r() \)'s execution. In either case, the transitive receivers of a routine invocation must be identified at compile-time. Without further restrictions enforced by the programming language, however, those receivers cannot be modularly determined at compile-time. Moreover, prohibiting call-backs altogether would be too limiting a restriction as it would rule out direct call-backs (including recursive invocations) too.

First-class relationships not only build the object graph declaratively but also describe the possible structures of the program heap at compile-time. In the design of the Rumer programming language, we leverage this property for modular program verification. We enforce a modularization discipline, the Matryoshka Principle, that requires any modifications of a program’s heap to comply with the structure prescribed by relationship declarations. To facilitate sound, modular reasoning about invariants, in particular, we require relationship declarations to be acyclic. This requirement results in a stratification of invariants and of the program heap and facilitates the modular determination of the vulnerable invariants and the prevention of transitive call-backs, respectively. In this chapter, we introduce the Matryoshka Principle and its entailed stratification and enforced encapsulation guarantees. In Chapter 5, we introduce our modular verification technique that builds on the guarantees made the the Matryoshka Principle.

### 4.2 Stratification

The \texttt{participants} clauses of relationship declarations restrict how instances may relate to each other and reveal how entities and relationships are composed to build a software system. The \texttt{participants} clauses of a Rumer program define a \textit{relation} from the set of relationship declarations of the program to the set of entity and relationship declarations of the program that are participants of relationships. The resulting relation thus is a relation between base types (see Definition 3.1 on page 62). For example, the \texttt{participants} clauses of the Rumer university program shown in Figure 3.3 on page 43 define the following relation:

\[
\{ \text{Attends} \rightarrow \text{Student}, \text{Attends} \rightarrow \text{Course}, \text{Assists} \rightarrow \text{Student}, \text{Assists} \rightarrow \text{Course}, \\
\text{Teaches} \rightarrow \text{Faculty}, \text{Teaches} \rightarrow \text{Course} \}
\]

The \texttt{participants} clauses of the Rumer Composite program in Figure 3.5 on page 45 define the following relation:

\[
\{ \text{Composite} \rightarrow \text{Parent}, \text{Composite} \rightarrow \text{Component}, \text{Parent} \rightarrow \text{Component} \}
\]
The Matryoshka Principle requires that the transitive closure of the relation defined by the participants clauses of a Rumer program forms a strict partial order. As illustrated by Figure 4.1, this requirement results in a stratification of programming language abstractions. Figure 4.1 depicts a schematic illustration of the Rumer stratification layers based on the Composite heap shown in Figure 3.7 on page 48 (see Composite program in Figure 3.5 on page 45). As opposed to Figure 3.7, Figure 4.1 depicts each base type of the Composite program in addition to the extent instances and element instances of those types. Figure 4.1 uses the same graphical notation as Figure 3.7 and displays base types as gray, rounded rectangles. It displays four such rectangles, one for the entity type Component, two for the relationship types Parent and Composite, and one for the application singleton type CompositePattern. Apart from the rectangle representing the application singleton type CompositePattern, each of these rectangles contains the extent instances and element instances shown in Figure 3.7. To keep the graphic well-arranged, Figure 4.1 only hints at the connecting lines between participant instances and relationship element instances and depicts role element instances as part of relationship extent instances.

Figure 4.1 represents the resulting ordering of relationships and participants by placing relationships (relatively) above their participants. As indicated by the vertical arrows, the ordering makes a relationship become an upper abstraction of its participants, and conversely, the participants become a lower abstraction of their relationships. Figure 4.1 indicates further that an application declaration becomes the topmost abstraction since it denotes the program entry point. As a result, the participants relation of a Rumer program also includes a tuple for the program’s application. For example, the participants relation for the Rumer Composite program shown in Figure 3.5 on page 45 becomes:

\[\{\text{CompositePattern} \rightarrow \text{Composite}, \text{Composite} \rightarrow \text{Parent}, \text{Composite} \rightarrow \text{Component}, \text{Parent} \rightarrow \text{Component}\}\]

The requirement imposed by the Matryoshka Principle, enforcing that the transitive closure of the participants relation of a Rumer program forms a strict partial order, gives rise to the following system invariant:

**System Invariant 4.1 (Acyclicity):** The transitive closure of the relation defined by the participants clauses of a Rumer program forms a strict partial order, guaranteeing that relationship declarations are acyclic.

The stratification induced by the Matryoshka Principle is enforced at compile-time, providing some liberalness with regard to the actual heap structure. As we detail in Section 4.4.2, the Matryoshka Principle bears resemblance to ownership type systems [93, 94, 95, 12, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100] since ownership type systems also impose a certain structure on a program’s heap. Besides the difference in the imposed heap structure (see Section 4.4.2), ownership type systems also differ from the Matryoshka Principle in that they enforce the heap structure at run-time, but do generally not allow an instance to change its
position in the heap structure at run-time. The Matryoshka Principle, on the other hand, allows an instance to change its participation in a relationship at run-time.

### 4.3 Admissibility criteria

In this section, we introduce the admissibility criteria imposed on a Rumer program by the Matryoshka Principle. The admissibility criteria provide strong encapsulation guarantees for Rumer types. They can be checked statically and are enforced by the Rumer compiler.

The admissibility criteria rely on the stratification of language abstractions resulting from the participants clauses of a Rumer program and stipulate restrictions that define (i) which routines are allowed to write to which locations, (ii) which invariants are allowed to depend on which locations, and (iii) on which instances a currently executing routine can invoke a routine. Locations in Rumer are application global variables, content
and fields of extent instances, fields of element instances, and fields of mold instances. Table 4.2 lists all possible Rumer locations and indicates for each location by which program statement it can be written to. As detailed by Table 4.2, fields of instances can be written to by assignments and the content of extent instances can be written to by invoking the built-in addition or removal operators (see Section 3.4.1 on page 65) on the extent instance. From a pure implementation perspective, invocations of the built-in addition or removal operators are routine invocations, rather than primitive statements. However, since those operators are system-provided and have a well-defined semantics, we treat them as primitive statements from the point of view of the Matryoshka Principle and its associated verification technique (see Chapter 5).

### 4.3.1 Admissible writes

To provide strong encapsulation of Rumer types, the Matryoshka Principle allows a routine to write at most to the locations of the routine’s current receiver instance. This requirement facilitates modular reasoning about the state changes of an instance.

Table 4.3 details, for each routine kind in Rumer, to which locations the routine is allowed to write. Table 4.3 states the admissible locations relative to the current receiver instance of a routine invocation. For example, a relationship extent method for a relationship type \( R \) with the participant base types \( A \) and \( B \) and the role identifiers \( a \) and \( b \), respectively, has the newly created extent instance \( rx \) of type Extent\(\langle\text{Element}\langle R \rangle\rangle \) as current receiver instance. This instance can be referred to by the `these` keyword. As indicated by Table 4.3, a relationship extent method can only write to the content of the current relationship extent instance \( rx \), to the fields of \( rx \), and to the non-interposed and interposed fields of any relationship element instance residing in \( rx \). For relationship extent constructors and default relationship extent constructors, the writable locations are identical, with the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application</td>
<td>global variable</td>
<td>assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship extent</td>
<td>content field</td>
<td>addition, removal assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mold</td>
<td>non-interposed field</td>
<td>assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interposed field</td>
<td>assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>element</td>
<td>non-interposed field</td>
<td>assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interposed field</td>
<td>assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity extent</td>
<td>content field</td>
<td>addition, removal assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mold</td>
<td>field</td>
<td>assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>element</td>
<td>field</td>
<td>assignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2: Programmer-definable locations and program statements that can write to these locations. Table 4.3 details as part of which routines those statements may occur.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Executing routine</th>
<th>Current receiver</th>
<th>Writable location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Application App</strong></td>
<td>App app</td>
<td>Global variables of app.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Relationship R with participant base types A a and B b</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default extent constructor</td>
<td>Extent(Element(R)) rx</td>
<td>Fields of rx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent constructor</td>
<td>Extent(Element(R)) rx</td>
<td>Content of rx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of rx. For any instance Element(R) r in rx: fields of r, fields of r.a, and fields of r.b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent method</td>
<td>Extent(Element(R)) rx</td>
<td>Content of rx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of rx. For any instance Element(R) r in rx: fields of r, fields of r.a, and fields of r.b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-interposed mold constructor</td>
<td>Mold(R) mr</td>
<td>Fields of mr, fields of mr.a, and fields of mr.b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-interposed mold initializer</td>
<td>Mold(R) mr</td>
<td>Fields of mr, fields of mr.a, and fields of mr.b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-interposed element method</td>
<td>Element(R) r</td>
<td>Fields of r, fields of r.a, and fields of r.b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interposed element method</td>
<td>Element(R,_) rab</td>
<td>Fields of rab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Entity E</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default extent constructor</td>
<td>Extent(Element(E)) ex</td>
<td>Fields of ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent constructor</td>
<td>Extent(Element(E)) ex</td>
<td>Content of ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of ex. For any instance Element(E) e in ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent method</td>
<td>Extent(Element(E)) ex</td>
<td>Content of ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of ex. For any instance Element(E) e in ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mold constructor</td>
<td>Mold(E) me</td>
<td>Fields of me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mold initializer</td>
<td>Mold(E) me</td>
<td>Fields of me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>element method</td>
<td>Element(E) e</td>
<td>Fields of e.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.3:** Locations to which executing routine is allowed to write. This table instantiates parameter U of the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques (see Section 5.1 on page 89). See Table 4.2 for summary of locations and corresponding write statements.

exception that default relationship extent constructors operate on empty extent instances and thus do not alter any element fields. The admissible writes for entity extent methods and (possibly default) entity extent constructors are analogous. As a result, Table 4.3 guarantees for extent instances that state changes of the extent instance as well as state changes of any element instances comprised in the extent instance are fully encapsulated by the methods of the type declaring the extent type.

The guarantees are similar for element instances and mold instances. Given the restric-
4.3 Admissibility Criteria

tions of Table 4.3, state changes of an element instance or mold instance are fully encapsulated by the declaring type’s element methods and mold constructors or initializers, respectively. Table 4.3 also confirms that interposed relationship element fields are encapsulated by their declaring relationships. As indicated by Table 4.3, only routines of the declaring relationship can write to interposed fields, but not the routines of the participant supertype of the role type into which the fields are interposed. As discussed in previous work [101], this property makes member interposition attractive for the modular verification of invariants over shared state. We elaborate on this in Section 7.1.3 on page 200. Similarly, Table 4.3 indicates that a role type cannot write to the fields inherited from its participant supertype, guaranteeing that those fields are encapsulated by the declaring participant supertype. Table 4.3 further requires that an application’s global variables can only be written to by the application’s actions and thus guarantees that an application’s global variables are encapsulated by the application.

According to Table 4.3, a relationship element instance’s role references, by which the relationship element instance refers to its participating instances, are immutable. The creation and destruction of element instances can only by achieved by the designated addition and removal operators introduced in Section 3.4.1 on page 65 and Section 3.4.2 on page 71, respectively. According to Table 4.2, those operators write to the content of an entity or relationship extent instance, and according to Table 4.3, invocations of such operators can only occur as part of extent methods and extent constructors of the extent instance’s base type. As a result, the instantiation and destruction of element instances is encapsulated by the extent methods and extent constructors of the element instance’s base type.

A program’s compliance with Table 4.3 can be checked at compile-time since the admissible writes are stated relative to the current receiver instance of an executing routine. For example, for the Composite pattern program displayed in Figure 3.11 on page 57, the invocation of the addition operator on line 15 is admissible since the addition operator writes to the Parent relationship extent instance that is the current receiver of the extent method append(). Similarly, the assignment to the interposed element field total on line 18 is admissible since x refers to an instance of type Element⟨Parent.parent⟩ that resides in the current extent receiver instance of the extent method append(). Likewise, the field assignments as part of the initializer declarations of the university program shown in Figure 3.15 on page 66 are admissible since they write to the Student mold instance that is the current receiver instance of the initializer.

4.3.2 Admissible invariants

To facilitate the modular verification of invariants, the Matryoshka Principle allows an invariant to depend at most on the locations encapsulated by the invariant-declaring type. As a result, it can be modularly determined which invariants are vulnerable to the execution of a routine.
Table 4.4: Locations on which an invariant is allowed to depend. This table indirectly instantiates parameter $D$ of the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques (see Section 5.1 on page 89). See Table 4.2 for a summary of locations and corresponding write statements.

Table 4.4 details for each programmer-definable invariant on which locations the invariant is allowed to depend. Table 4.4 displays a row for each of the five invariant categories introduced in Section 3.2.5 on page 55. These categories are: application invariant, relationship extent invariant, relationship element invariant, entity extent invariant, and entity element invariant. Mold types are not included in this list since they are value types and no invariants can be declared for value types. Table 4.4 states the admissible invariants relative to the instance on which the invariant is imposed. For example, a relationship extent invariant for a relationship type $R$ with the participant base types $A$ and $B$ and the corresponding role types $R.a$ and $R.b$, respectively, is imposed on the extent instance $rx$ of type $\text{Extent} \langle \text{Element} \langle R \rangle \rangle$. This instance can be referred to by the $\text{these}$ keyword. As indicated by Table 4.4, such a relationship extent invariant can only depend on the locations that are encapsulated by the extent methods and extent constructors of the declaring relationship $R$. These locations include the content of the relationship extent instance $rx$, the fields of $rx$, and the non-interposed and interposed fields of any relationship element instance residing in $rx$. The admissibility criteria for entity extent invariants are analogous.

To guarantee that an invariant only depends on the locations to which the invariant’s instance is also allowed to write, the restrictions enforced by Table 4.4 have to match those enforced by Table 4.3. For example, like an extent method, which can write to the content and fields of its current extent receiver instance as well as to the fields of the element instances residing in that extent instance, an extent invariant is allowed to depend on the content and fields of its current extent receiver instance as well as on the fields of the element instances residing in that extent instance. Similarly, only an invariant of the
relationship that declares an interposed field is allowed to depend on that field, but not any invariant of the participant supertype of the role type into which the field is interposed. And conversely, a relationship invariant is not allowed to depend on any fields of the instances of its role types’ supertype.

A program’s compliance with Table 4.4 can be checked at compile-time since the admissible invariants are stated relative to the instance on which the invariant is imposed. For example, in the case of the Composite pattern program shown in Figure 3.11 on page 57, the relationship extent invariant of Parent (line 21) is admissible since it only depends on the content of the invariant’s Parent extent instance as well as on the interposed fields total of the element instances residing in that extent instance. These locations are encapsulated by the relationship Parent. The relationship element invariant of Composite (line 30), however, does not comply with the admissibility criterion specified in Table 4.4 as the invariant depends on locations of the invariant’s element instance’s tree role extent instance. On line 31, for example, the invariant refers to the child projection of the relation described by the Parent extent instance referred to by the tree role reference. This projection is encapsulated by Parent’s extent methods, but not by the methods of Composite. In Chapter 6, we return to this issue and show how we can extend Table 4.4 so as to accommodate the Composite element invariant. In Section 7.1.2 on page 193 we provide the correspondingly updated version of the Rumer Composite pattern specification.

### 4.3.3 Admissible invocations

To restore data type induction soundness for Rumer programs, the Matryoshka Principle guarantees the absence of transitive call-backs. A call-back, in general, can only occur if there exists a cycle in the reference structure underlying the call chain. Call-backs can be prevented by making this reference structure acyclic. As stated by System Invariant 4.1, relationship declarations in Rumer are guaranteed to be acyclic. Thus, in Rumer, call-backs can be prevented by requiring “routine invocations to propagate in the direction of a program’s participants relation.”

Table 4.5 details how a less stringent version of the above requirement is implemented in Rumer. It lists, for the execution of a routine, on which instances the routine is allowed to invoke routines. For the execution of default extent constructors, mold constructors, and programmer-defined mold initializers, Table 4.5 prohibits any further routine invocations. Mold constructors and (possibly default) extent constructors have the newly instantiated instance as the current receiver instance. For the execution of the remaining routines, Table 4.5 establishes the following pattern: a routine executing on an instance $o$ can invoke a routine (a) on its current receiver instance $o$, (b) on an element instance of $\text{BaseType}(o)$, if $o$ is an extent instance, or on a role element instance of $\text{BaseType}(o)$, if $o$ is a relationship element instance, (c) on an instance whose base type is a direct participant of $\text{BaseType}(o)$, if $\text{BaseType}(o)$ is a relationship, and (d) on a mold instance. As a result, Table 4.5 not only guarantees that routine invocations propagate in the direction of a pro-
gram’s participant relation (c) but also allows for direct call-backs, including recursive
invocations (a). Furthermore, it allows routine invocations to propagate from an extent
instance to an element instance of the same base type and from a relationship element
instance to a role element instance of the same base type (b). Table 4.5 does further
not restrict invocations of mold constructors and mold initializers (d). Since relationship
declarations are acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1) and since extent types, element types,
and role types are distinct (see Section 3.3 on page 59) and since mold constructors and
mold initializers cannot invoke routines, the routine invocation scheme enforced by Ta-
ble 4.5 prevents transitive call-backs. Thus, Table 4.5 gives rise to the following system
invariant:

**System Invariant 4.2 (No transitive call-backs):** The admissibility criterion “admissi-
ble invocations” of the Matryoshka Principle guarantees the absence of transitive call-
backs.

In terms of Figure 4.1, Table 4.5 guarantees that call chains are either recursive or prop-
agate **inwards** (from an extent/element instance to an element/role instance of the same
base type) or **downwards** (from an upper to its immediate lower layer). For example,
the left Parent extent instance px1 in Figure 4.1 may invoke routines on the follow-
ing instances: px1, any Parent element instance that resides in px1 or that resides
in the right Parent extent instance px2 in Figure 4.1, any Parent.parent role
element instance related to a Parent element instance that resides in px1 or in px2,
the only Component extent instance cx1 in Figure 4.1, any Component element in-
ice that resides in cx1, any mold instance of base type Parent, Component, or
Composite. The left Parent extent instance px1 in Figure 4.1 could also instantiate
a new Component extent instance by invoking Component’s default extent con-
structor. However, Table 4.5 forbids call chains to propagate horizontally or upwards. For
example, the Parent extent instance px1 is neither allowed to invoke a method on the
Parent extent instance px2 nor to instantiate a new Parent extent instance by invok-
ing Parent’s default extent constructor, nor is it allowed to invoke any routine on an
instance of base type Composite or base type CompositePattern.

A program’s compliance with Table 4.5 can be checked at compile-time since a program’s
stratification is known at compile-time. For example, in the case of the Composite pattern
program shown in Figure 3.5 on page 45, the invocation of the extent method append() on line 15 is admissible since it is invoked on the current Composite element receiver
instance’s tree Parent extent instance. This instance is of type Extent<Element<Parent>>,
which is a direct participant of Composite. Also the invocations of the built-in query
operators in the extent method append() of the Composite pattern program shown in
Figure 3.11 on page 57 are admissible. Built-in query operators are unconstrained by the
Matryoshka Principle since they are side-effect free.
## 4.3 Admissibility Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Executing routine</th>
<th>Allowed callee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Application App</strong></td>
<td>Current receiver instance of type App.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action</td>
<td>For any relationship or entity T, any instance o such that $BaseType(o) = T$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Relationship R with participant base types A a and B b</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default extent constructor</td>
<td>Current receiver instance of type Extent\langle Element\langle R\rangle \rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent constructor</td>
<td>Any instance of type Element\langle R\rangle, Element\langle R.a\rangle, Element\langle R.b\rangle, or any instance o such that $BaseType(o) = A$ or $BaseType(o) = B$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent method</td>
<td>For any relationship or entity T, any instance of type Mold\langle T\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-interposed mold constructor</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-interposed mold initializer</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-interposed element method</td>
<td>Current receiver instance of type Element\langle R\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any instance of type Element\langle R.a\rangle or Element\langle R.b\rangle, or any instance o such that $BaseType(o) = A$ or $BaseType(o) = B$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For any relationship or entity T, any instance of type Mold\langle T\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interposed element method</td>
<td>Current receiver instance of type Element\langle R._\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any instance o such that $BaseType(o) = A$ or $BaseType(o) = B$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For any relationship or entity T, any instance of type Mold\langle T\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Entity E</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default extent constructor</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent constructor</td>
<td>Current receiver instance of type Extent\langle Element\langle E\rangle \rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any instance of type Element\langle E\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For any relationship or entity T, any instance of type Mold\langle T\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent method</td>
<td>Current receiver instance of type Extent\langle Element\langle E\rangle \rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any instance of type Element\langle E\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For any relationship or entity T, any instance of type Mold\langle T\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mold constructor</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mold initializer</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>element method</td>
<td>Current receiver instance of type Element\langle E\rangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For any relationship or entity T, any instance of type Mold\langle T\rangle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.5:** Receivers on which executing routine is allowed to invoke routines. This table instantiates parameter $C$ of the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques (see Section 5.1 on page 89).
4.4 Discussion

In this section, we reflect on the design decisions underlying the Matryoshka Principle and discuss how the Matryoshka Principle relates to object ownership.

4.4.1 Reflection on design decisions

The Matryoshka Principle enforces a “lightweight” modularization discipline. The discipline is lightweight as it only constrains writes to locations but not reads of locations. As a result, the Matryoshka Principle allows the declaration of variables or fields that point in the opposite direction of a program’s participants relation\(^1\). As long as those references are only used for reading the locations they point to, the accesses are unconstrained by the Matryoshka Principle. However, the principle forbids any writes to the locations to which the references point as those writes may execute in inconsistent states. These restrictions reflect the primary design intent underlying the Matryoshka Principle, which is to facilitate modular reasoning about state change in sequential, relationship-based programs. If the principle were to accommodate concurrent programs as well, then it should also control read accesses to locations.

The Matryoshka Principle requires routine invocations to gradually propagate downwards a program’s participants relation, but forbids “jumps” even if they conform to the direction of the participants relation. This restriction could be lifted without compromising the guarantees made by the principle. However, the support of “jumping” routine invocations would render the checking of a program’s compliance with the Matryoshka Principle less modular. In the present version of the Matryoshka Principle, to check a program’s compliance with the Matryoshka Principle a relationship only needs to know its immediate participant types. However, if “jumping” routine invocations were supported, then a relationship would need to know all its transitive participant types.

The stratification induced by the Matryoshka Principle is enforced at compile-time. A static enforcement of the desired heap stratification permits some liberalness with regard to the resulting stratification. In particular, it allows instances to change their “position” in the heap structure at run-time. However, a static enforcement of the heap stratification also comes at the price of a non-modular program well-formedness check, guaranteeing that a program’s participants relations is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1). In Section 7.2 on page 204, we discuss the elaboration of a module system as part of future work. Given a module system, the desired program stratification can be formulated relative to the program’s modules, and the checking of the acyclicity of the program’s participants relation should become modular with regard to a particular module.

\(^1\)Any such element type variables or fields are implemented as weak references to facilitate their destruction upon executing a removal operation (see Section 3.4.2 on page 71)
4.4.2 Connections to ownership

The Matryoshka Principle leads to a stratification of a Rumer program’s heap and guarantees strong encapsulation of the program’s instances. From this perspective, the Matryoshka Principle bears resemblance to ownership type systems. Different flavors of ownership type systems have been developed (e.g., Ownership Types [93, 94, 95, 97] and Universe Types [12, 96, 98, 99, 100], see Section 6.4 on page 179 for further details), but they all structure a program’s heap as an ownership tree, where each object is owned by exactly one other object, and they enforce encapsulation policies, which restrict the existence or use of references between objects [98].

The Matryoshka Principle most closely relates to Universe Types [12, 96, 98, 99, 100] since the Universe Type system does not constrain references that are only used for reading (”any” references) and prevents call-backs into owners from within owned objects. However, the Matryoshka Principle differs importantly from Universe Types (and other ownership type systems) in the enforced heap topology and encapsulation policy. Whereas every object in the Universe Type system has a unique owner, an entity or relationship instance in Rumer can participate in more than one relationship instance. The relationship instances in which an entity or relationship instance participates can further be of different relationship types. Moreover, entity and relationship instances can freely change their relationship participation at run-time\(^2\). The possibility to migrate from one owner to another (“ownership transfer”), on the other hand, is only supported by a number of ownership type systems (e.g., [102, 103]) and imposes uniqueness guarantees on references. The liberalness with regard to the resulting heap topology offered by the Matryoshka Principle requires a static enforcement of the heap topology. Ownership type systems, on the other hand, rely on the resulting topology to be enforced at run-time. As discussed in the previous section, this liberalness comes at the price of a non-modular program well-formedness check, guaranteeing that a program’s participants relations is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1). Given the differences in underlying heap topology, the encapsulation policies enforced on top of the heap topology fall out differently too. Whereas Universe Types enforce the owner-as-modifier discipline [96], which ensures that modifications of an object are initiated by the object’s owner, the Matryoshka Principle does not impose such a restriction. Instead, the Matryoshka Principle allows modifications of an entity or relationship instance to be initiated by any of the relationship instances the very entity or relationship instance (possibly transitively) participates.

---

\(^2\)As discussed in Section 3.4.2 on page 71, the Rumer removal operators are subject to referential integrity (see System Invariant 3.7 on page 74).
The guarantees made by the Matryoshka Principle facilitate the modular verification of Rumer programs. In this chapter, we introduce a visible-state verification technique for Rumer that leverages the stratification and admissibility criteria imposed on a Rumer program by the Matryoshka Principle. We first provide the necessary background information on visible-state verification techniques (Section 5.1). Then, we present our verification technique (Section 5.2) and prove its soundness (Section 5.3).

5.1 Background

The verification technique we developed for Rumer relies on the guarantees provided by the Matryoshka Principle. Since the admissibility criteria of the Matryoshka Principle (see Section 4.3 on page 78) restore data type induction soundness for Rumer programs, our verification technique applies data type induction as a proof technique. It thus falls in the category of visible-state verification techniques [16] that require instances to meet their invariants in the initial and final states of routine executions (i.e., the visible states) but allow instances to temporarily break their invariants during the execution of a routine.

To describe our verification technique, we use the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques introduced by Drossopoulou et al. [104]. The framework captures a visible-state verification technique in terms of seven parameters. These parameters are formulated relative to the execution of a routine $r$ declared by a type $t$ and denote either a set of invariants or a set of instances:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\mathcal{X}_{(t,r)}$</td>
<td>set of invariants that are expected to hold in the initial and final state (i.e., visible states) of the execution of the routine $r$ on an instance of type $t$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mathcal{V}_{(t,r)}$</td>
<td>set of invariants that are vulnerable to the execution of the routine $r$ on an instance of type $t$. The executing routine $r$ can break invariants either by writing to locations or by invoking routines that break invariants without re-establishing them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mathcal{B}_{(t,r,s)}$</td>
<td>set of invariants that must be proven to hold before invoking a routine on a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
void appendComponent (Component c, Component p) {
  this.tree.append(c, p);
  check this.tree in C
  assume X
  X \ V
  holds
  prove B
  prove E
  assume X
}

Figure 5.1: Parameters of the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques. Illustration based on [104] using element method appendComponent() (see Figure 3.5 on page 45).

callee in the set of instances s during the execution of the routine r on an instance of type t.

\( \mathcal{E}_{(t,r)} \) set of invariants that must be proven to hold in the final state (i.e., at the end) of the execution of the routine r on an instance of type t.

\( \mathcal{U}_{(t,r,t')} \) set of permitted receivers of type t' for an update of their locations during the execution of the routine r on an instance of type t.

\( \mathcal{D}_{(t)} \) the set of invariants that depend on the locations of an instance of type t (and, indirectly, the set of locations on which an invariant of an instance of type t may depend).

\( \mathcal{C}_{(t,r,t',r')} \) set of permitted receivers of type t' for an invocation (i.e., call) of routine r' during the execution of the routine r on an instance of type t.

Figure 5.1 illustrates the meaning of these parameters based on the element method appendComponent() of the Rumer Composite pattern program in Figure 3.5 on page 45. As demonstrated by the figure, \( X \) can be assumed to hold in the initial and final states of method appendComponent(). In between these visible states only \( X \setminus V \) can be assumed to hold since some invariants may be temporarily broken by the execution of the method. For location updates and routine invocations, the receiver instances must be checked to be in \( U \) and \( C \), respectively. For example, before the invocation of method append() on the receiver this.tree the instance referred to by this.tree must be checked to be in \( C \). In the pre-state of a method call (i.e., append()), \( \mathbb{B} \) must be proven, and in the final state of the method execution (i.e., appendComponent()), \( \mathbb{E} \) must be proven. Parameter \( \mathcal{D} \) (not shown in Figure 5.1), lastly, constrains the effects of location updates by indicating the set of invariants that may be affected by an update.

In addition, the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques establishes \textit{conditions} on the parameters that are sufficient to guarantee soundness of the described verification technique. This general soundness result reduces the complex task of proving soundness of a verification technique to checking a number of fairly simple conditions [104]. The unified framework for visible-state verification techniques has been elaborated in the context of object-oriented languages and focuses on object invariants.
Furthermore, it only supports the proof obligation of establishing an invariant whereas our verification technique additionally relies on the proof obligation of preserving an invariant. Thus, the general soundness result of the framework cannot be adopted for our verification technique, and we developed our own soundness proof for our verification technique. Like Summers et al. [105], we find it convenient to use the framework for illustration purposes only and describe our verification technique by instantiating the seven framework parameters. In the development of our soundness argument, however, the framework conditions proved to be very helpful. For instance, the first and second condition of the framework (page 429 in [104]), which relates the proof obligations $\mathbb{B}$ and $\mathbb{E}$, respectively, to the expected invariants $\mathbb{E}$, surfaces in the proof of parts (1) (b) and (2), respectively, of our main soundness Theorem 5.35. The third and fourth condition are only indirectly apparent. Those conditions ensure that the invariants that are invalidated by a method are in the method’s vulnerable set $\mathbb{V}$. Our soundness argument relies on the concept of an invalidator to describe the set of instances whose invariants are vulnerable to the execution of a method on an instance by updating the locations of that instance. Thus, the third and fourth condition indirectly surface in part (1) (a), Case \((n + 1 \text{ is even})\) and \((n + 1 \text{ is odd})\), respectively, of our main soundness Theorem 5.35. The fifth condition of the framework has no correspondence in our soundness argument since Rumer does not support classical, object-oriented inheritance.

5.2 Proof obligations and assumptions

In this section, we elaborate our verification technique that we introduced in [75]. We define the technique in terms of the seven parameters of the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques. The parameters $\mathbb{U}$ and $\mathbb{C}$ as well as indirectly $\mathbb{D}$ capture the encapsulation properties of the programming language underlying the verification technique. For Rumer, these encapsulation properties are defined by the admissibility criteria introduced in Section 4.3 on page 78, i.e., Table 4.3, Table 4.5, and Table 4.4. In this section, we introduce the remaining parameters $\mathbb{X}$, $\mathbb{V}$, $\mathbb{B}$, and $\mathbb{E}$. To this end, we instantiate those parameters for each routine kind in Rumer. We discuss the resulting routine-specific instantiations in Section 5.2.3. Before doing so, we sketch the general pattern underlying our verification technique and introduce the differentiation between free, benign, and malign relationships.

5.2.1 General pattern

We devised our verification technique so as to leverage the stratification and encapsulation guarantees made by the Matryoshka Principle. We illustrate the general pattern underlying the instantiations of the framework parameters $\mathbb{V}$, $\mathbb{X}$, $\mathbb{E}$, and $\mathbb{B}$ for our verification technique using a synthetic Rumer program. Figure 5.2 displays a heap snapshot of this synthetic program, which comprises instances of the following type declarations: the application $\text{App}$, the relationships $\text{A}$, $\text{B}$, $\text{C}$, $\text{D}$, and $\text{E}$, and the entities $\text{F}$, $\text{G}$, and $\text{H}$. The
snapshot captures the execution of a routine on an instance of base type C.

Parameter $V$ relies on the guarantees made by parameters $U$ ("admissible writes") and $D$ ("admissible invariants"), which allow for modular reasoning about an instance’s state and about the effects of state changes on invariants, respectively. As detailed by Table 4.3 on page 80, we set up parameter $U$ so that a routine may only write to locations of the current receiver instance. For example, in the case of a non-interposed relationship element method, the method may only write to its relationship element receiver instance’s non-interposed and interposed element fields. Furthermore, as detailed by Table 4.4 on page 82, we set up parameter $D$ so that an invariant may only depend on locations of the invariant’s instance. For example, in the case of a relationship extent invariant, the invariant may only depend on its relationship extent receiver instance’s content or fields or on the fields of any element instances residing in its relationship extent receiver instance’s content. The choice of the parameters $U$ and $D$ guarantee that the set of invariants $V$ that are vulnerable to the execution of a routine comprises those invariants that may depend on the locations to which the routine can write. In Section 5.2.3 we detail for each routine kind what its vulnerable invariants are. To illustrate the underlying general pattern in Fig-
ure 5.2, we over-approximate the set of invariants $\mathcal{V}$ that are vulnerable to the execution of a routine on an instance of base type $C$ as the set of invariants of instances of base type $C$. Figure 5.2 displays those invariants by a dotted rectangle that encloses the type whose instances’ invariants are vulnerable.

Parameter $X$ relies on the stratification induced by the Matryoshka Principle. We devised the parameter so that a routine can always expect the invariants of instances of those base types of which the routine-declaring base type is not a direct or transitive participant. For the routine executing on an instance of base type $C$ captured in Figure 5.2, for example, these are the invariants of all instances of base types $B$, $D$, $E$, $F$, $G$, and $H$. Figure 5.2 displays the base types whose instances’ invariants are expected in the visible states of a routine by dark gray boxes and, conversely, the ones that are not expect by light gray boxes. Thus, the routine in Figure 5.2 cannot expect the invariants of instances of base types $App$, $A$, and $C$. In Section 5.2.3, we detail for each routine kind what its expected invariants are. Some of those instantiations may additionally include invariants of instances of the relationship-declaring base type. As we will see, the inclusion of those invariants is mainly determined by parameters $C$ ("admissible invocations") and $\mathcal{V}$.

Parameters $E$ and $B$, finally, rely on the parameters $X$, $\mathcal{V}$, and $C$. The set of invariants $E$ that must be proven to hold in the final state of a routine execution is determined by the invariants $X$ and $\mathcal{V}$ and comprises those invariants that are both expected in the visible states of the routine and vulnerable to the execution of the routine. The set of invariants $B$ that must be proven to hold before the invocation of a routine, on the other hand, relies not only on the parameters $X$ and $\mathcal{V}$ but also on parameter $C$ ("admissible invocations"). As detailed by Table 4.5 on page 85, we set up parameter $C$ so as to prevent transitive call-backs. Relying on this guarantee as well as on parameter $X$, which guarantees that the invariants of possible callees that are of a different base type than the caller can be expected, the set of invariants $B$ includes at most the invariants of instances of the same base type as the caller. For example, the set $B$ must include the invariant of the caller in the case of direct call-backs.

In summary, the instantiations of the parameters $\mathcal{V}$, $X$, $E$, and $B$ for our verification technique give rise to a scheme in which routines can expect the invariants of instances of base types of which the routine-declaring base type is not a direct or transitive participant, but cannot expect the invariants of instances of base types of which the routine-declaring base type is a direct or transitive participant. As a result, the invariants expected by the current receiver instance of a routine are left broken while sub-calls propagate downwards the participants relation, but the invariants expected by those callees are re-established by the time the sub-calls return.

As briefly mentioned in Section 5.1, our verification technique employs two kinds of proof obligations. The first kind of proof obligation is the one of establishing an invariant. This obligation denotes a classical proof obligation, which is also supported by the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques. It requires a routine to assert that an invariant holds in a particular state of the routine. The second kind of proof obligation
is the one of preserving and invariant. This obligation has been recently introduced in the context of object and class invariants in [18] and [105], respectively. It represents a weaker proof obligation as it does not require a routine to assert that an invariant holds but to show that the routine does not break the invariant under the assumption that the invariant held in the routine’s initial state.

Lastly, our verification technique does not confine any built-in query operators. Built-in query operators are system-provided and have a well-defined semantics (see Section 3.2.3 on page 49). Their correct operation does not rely on existing instances satisfying their invariants. Furthermore, built-in query operators are side-effect free. Thus, our verification technique does not impose a visible-state semantics on built-in query operators.

### 5.2.2 Free, benign, and malign relationships

As explained previously, the set of invariants \( V \) that are vulnerable to the execution of a routine comprises those invariants that may depend on the locations to which the routine can write. For element methods, this set \( V \) comprises in general the invariant of the current receiver instance of the method as well as the invariant of the extent instance in which the current receiver instance resides. The existence of interposed relationship element fields, however, may affect the set of invariants \( V \) that are vulnerable to the execution of an interposed relationship element method. Since interposed relationship element fields are shared among all the relationship element instances that reside in an extent instance and that refer to the same participant instance (see Section 3.2.4 on page 51 and System Invariant 3.6 on page 71), a non-interposed relationship element method may compromise not only the invariant of its current receiver instance and the invariant of the extent instance in which the current receiver instance resides but also the invariants of all those element instances that refer to the same participant instance as the current receiver instance.

Figure 5.3 a) illustrates this issue for the declaration of a relationship \( R \) with the participant base types \( A \) and \( B \) and the role identifiers \( a \) and \( b \), respectively. The relationship interposes the element field \( x \) into the role \( R.a \) and the element field \( y \) into the role \( R.b \) and declares a non-interposed element field \( z \). Furthermore, the relationship declares an element invariant that depends on the fields \( x \) and \( z \). If a non-interposed relationship element method executes, for example, on the topmost relationship element instance in Figure 5.3 a), then not only the invariant of the topmost element instance is vulnerable but also the invariant of the second topmost relationship element instance. Both relationship element instances share the topmost role element instance of the role \( R.a \), and changes applied to the role element field \( x \) by either relationship element instance affect the invariants of both relationship element instances.

The set of vulnerable invariants \( V \) for a non-interposed relationship element method are only increased by the invariants of all the relationship element instances that refer to the same participant instance as the current receiver instance if the relationship declares in-
Figure 5.3: Interdependence between relationship element invariants on interposed fields and uniqueness assertions of extent invariants (see also Table 5.4): a) A-malign relationship, b) A-benign relationship. Elliptic rectangles denote relationship participant instances (i.e., entity/relationship element/extent instances), see legend of Figure 4.1 on page 78 for remaining symbols.

terposed element fields and imposes an element invariant on any of these fields. But even if a relationship imposes an element invariant on its interposed element fields, the set of vulnerable invariants $\mathcal{V}$ does not necessarily need to be increased. If the relationship additionally declares an extent invariant that prevents the sharing of interposed element fields among different relationship element instances, then the set $\mathcal{V}$ for a non-interposed relationship element method only comprises the invariant of the current receiver instance of the method and the invariant of the extent instance in which the current receiver instance resides. Figure 5.3 b) illustrates this scenario and augments the relationship of Figure 5.3 a) with an extent invariant that guarantees that any extent instance of type $\text{Extent}(R)$ builds a right-unique relation. Given this assertion, any non-interposed relationship element method executing on an instance of the relationship of Figure 5.3 b) invalidates at most the element invariant of its current receiver instance.

The factors that finally determine the set of vulnerable invariants $\mathcal{V}$ for a non-interposed relationship element method are: the existence of an element invariant on an interposed element field and the existence of relation uniqueness assertions through extent invariants. Since interposed element fields and uniqueness assertions can both be declared for either side of the relationship, nine different relationship kinds can be distinguished. Table 5.4 provides an overview of these kinds for the same relationship as the one in Figure 5.3. The second to fifth column of Table 5.4 indicate which fields the element invariant of the relationship constrains. For example, the second column represents relationships whose element invariant constrains at most the non-interposed element field $z$ and the fifth column represents relationships whose element invariant constrains at least the interposed element fields $x$ and $y$. The non-interposed element field $z$ is parenthe-
Table 5.4: Summary of different relationship kinds. Relationship R with participant base types A and B and role identifiers a and b, resp., and non-interposed element field z and interposed element fields x and y for roles R.a and R.b, resp. Symbols: ‘●’ mandatory, ‘○’ optional, - nonexistent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind</th>
<th>Element invariant</th>
<th>Uniqueness assertion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(z) x, (z) y, (z)</td>
<td>A-unique B-unique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free</td>
<td>● - - - -</td>
<td>○ ○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-benign</td>
<td>- ● - - -</td>
<td>○ ●</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-benign</td>
<td>- - ● - -</td>
<td>● ○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-benign–B-benign</td>
<td>- - - ● -</td>
<td>● ●</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-malign</td>
<td>- ● - - -</td>
<td>○ -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-malign</td>
<td>- - ● - -</td>
<td>- ○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-benign–B-malign</td>
<td>- - - ● -</td>
<td>- ●</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-malign–B-benign</td>
<td>- - - - ●</td>
<td>● -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-malign–B-malign</td>
<td>- - - - -</td>
<td>- -</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As indicated by the first column of Table 5.4, we distinguish the various relationship kinds by different names. A *free* relationship is a relationship that does not impose an element invariant on its interposed element fields. This kind of relationship also subsumes any relationships that do not declare any interposed element fields. Non-interposed element methods of a free relationship invalidate at most the element invariant of their current receiver instance. A *benign* relationship is a relationship that imposes an element invariant on its interposed element field(s) and that declares an extent invariant guaranteeing that the underlying relation is unique. For example, the relationship of Figure 5.3 b) is an instance of an A-benign relationship since the element invariant constrains the field x, which is interposed into the role R.a, and since the extent invariant imposes a uniqueness assertion on the role R.b. Non-interposed element methods of an A-benign and/or B-benign relationship are guaranteed to invalidate at most the element invariant of their current receiver instances upon writes to the fields interposed into the roles R.a and/or R.b, respectively. We use the term *malign* for relationships whose element invariant constrains interposed element fields but whose extent invariant fails to impose uniqueness assertions on the side opposite the one targeted by member interposition. For example, the relationship of Figure 5.3 a) is an instance of an A-malign relationship since the element invariant constrains the field x, which is interposed into the role R.a, but the extent invariant does not impose a uniqueness assertion on the role R.b. Non-interposed element methods of an A-malign and/or B-malign relationship invalidate not only the element invariant of their current receiver instances but also the element invariants of all relationship element instances that relate to the same instances of the role R.a and/or R.b, respectively.
5.2 PROOF OBLIGATIONS AND ASSUMPTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters for:</th>
<th>action of a application App</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current receiver:</td>
<td>App app</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

X: Invariant of app.

For any entity or relationship S declared in App: for any instance Extent\(\langle\text{Element}(S)\rangle\) sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Element\(\langle S\rangle\) s in sx.

V: Invariant of app.

B: If callee = app, then invariant of app.

E: Invariant of app.

Table 5.5: Parameters X, V, B, and E for application actions.

5.2.3 Parameter instantiations

The routine-specific instantiations of the parameters X, V, B, and E of the unified framework for visible-state verification techniques are shown in Table 5.5, Table 5.6, Table 5.7, Table 5.8, Table 5.9, Table 5.10, Table 5.11, Table 5.12, and Table 5.13. We review each routine-specific instantiation in turn. Rumer program examples that illustrate these routine-specific instantiations are discussed in Section 7.1 on page 185.

Table 5.5 specifies the parameters X, V, B, and E for application actions. The parameters are specified for the execution of an application action on the singleton application receiver instance app of type App. Since an application invariant can only depend on application global variables, only the invariant of the current receiver instance app is vulnerable to the action execution. According to Figure 5.2, an application action expects the invariants of instances of those base types in its visible states of which App is not a direct or transitive participant. Since an application is the topmost abstraction of a Rumer program (see Section 4.2 on page 76), an application action expects the invariants of all element and extent instances of a program’s entity and relationship declarations. Thanks to the proof obligations E and B, an application action can also expect the invariant of its current receiver instance app to hold in the action’s visible states. The proof obligation B to establish the invariant of the current receiver instance app before a direct call-back is vital to soundly support data type induction.

Table 5.6 specifies the parameters X, V, B, and E for default entity extent constructors and default relationship extent constructors (see Section 3.4.1 on page 70 as well as Table 3.19 and Table 3.20, resp.). The parameters are specified for a default extent constructor of an entity or relationship T that executes on a receiver instance tx of type Extent\(\langle\text{Element}(T)\rangle\). As indicated by Table 5.6, the invariant of the extent instance tx is vulnerable to the execution of the default extent constructor. This invariant is the only invariant which is vulnerable to the constructor’s execution. In particular, no invariants of element instances of type Element\(\langle T\rangle\) are affected since the current extent receiver instance tx is empty. As implied by Figure 5.2, the default extent constructor expects in its visible states the invariants of instances of any base type S of which T is not a direct or transitive participant. In addition, the default extent constructor expects the invariants of all other extent
Parameters for: default extent constructor of an entity or relationship T
Current receiver: Extent<\text{Element}(T)> tx

X: For any instance Extent<\text{Element}(T)> tx' such that tx \neq tx': invariant of tx' and invariants of all instances \text{Element}(T) t' in tx'.

For any entity or relationship S such that S \neq T and T is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent<\text{Element}(S)> sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances \text{Element}(S) s in sx.

V: Invariant of tx.

B: n/a

E: Invariant of tx.

Table 5.6: Parameters X, V, B, and E for default entity and relationship extent constructors.

instances tx' of type Extent<\text{Element}(T)>\text{,} including the invariants of element instances t' residing in such extent instances tx'. However, the default extent constructor cannot expect the invariant of its current receiver instance tx since this instance has been newly instantiated and may thus not meet its invariant. The reason why the invariants of other extent instances tx' and of their element instances can be expected is due to parameter C (see Table 4.5 on page 85), which prevents routine invocations to propagate horizontally or upwards. For example, for the creation of instance b\times 1 in Figure 5.2, the application App invokes the default relationship extent constructor new Extent<\text{B}>()\text{, which executes on the relationship extent instance under construction b}\times 1. During its execution, the constructor can expect the invariants of all extent instances and element instances of the types A, C, D, E, F, G, and H as well as the invariant of the extent instance b\times 2 including the invariants of its element instances b\times 2-1, b\times 2-2, b\times 2-3, and b\times 2-4. The proof obligation E, finally, guarantees that the newly created extent instance tx satisfies its invariant once the constructor completes. Since default extent constructors do not invoke any routines, the proof obligation B is vacuous.

Table 5.7 specifies the parameters X, V, B, and E for programmer-defined entity extent constructors and programmer-defined relationship extent constructors. The parameters are specified for an extent constructor of an entity or relationship T that executes on a receiver instance tx of type Extent<\text{Element}(T)>. Programmer-defined extent constructors only marginally differ in the parameters V, B, and E from default extent constructors. Since programmer-defined extent constructors may include statements to populate the current extent receiver instance tx and to modify any of the newly instantiated element instances, the invariants of any element instances t residing in the extent instance tx are vulnerable too (parameter V). Thus, the invariant of the current extent receiver instance tx as well as the invariants of its element instances t are the only invariants that are vulnerable to the constructor’s execution. In particular, no invariants of other extent instances tx' of type Extent<\text{Element}(T)> are affected by any modifications of the element instances t since those element instances are guaranteed to reside in the current extent receiver instance tx only (see System Invariant 3.6 on page 71). The proof obligation B guards against direct call-backs and requires the invariant of the current extent receiver instance
5.2 Proof Obligations and Assumptions

Parameters for: extent constructor of an entity or relationship T

Current receiver: Extent<Element(T)⟩ tx

| X | For any instance Extent<Element(T)⟩ tx' such that tx ≠ tx': invariant of tx' and invariants of all instances Element(T) t' in tx'. For any entity or relationship S such that S ≠ T and T is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent<Element(S)⟩ sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Element(S) s in sx. |
| V | Invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element(T) t in tx. |
| B | If callee = tx, then invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element(T) t in tx. |
| E | Invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element(T) t in tx. |

Table 5.7: Parameters X, V, B, and E for programmer-defined entity and relationship extent constructors.

tx and the invariants of its element instances t to be established. Furthermore, the proof obligation makes sure that the B-uniqueness and/or A-uniqueness assertions of tx's extent invariant are established, should the callee be an element instance t that resides in tx and should T be an A-benign and/or B-benign relationship (see Table 5.4). The proof obligation E, finally, guarantees that the newly created extent instance tx and its element instances t satisfy their invariants once the constructor completes.

Table 5.8 specifies the parameters X, V, B, and E for entity extent methods and relationship extent methods. The parameters are specified for an extent method of an entity or relationship T that executes on a receiver instance tx of type Extent<Element(T)⟩. Extent methods and programmer-defined extent constructors only differ in the parameter X. As opposed to an extent constructor, an extent method additionally expects the invariant of its current receiver instance tx as well as the invariants of the element instances t residing in tx (parameter V). This assumption relies on parameter C but also on the proof obligations of extent constructors, which guarantee that newly created extent instances satisfy their invariants.

Table 5.9 specifies the parameters X, V, B, and E for element methods of entities and free relationships (see Table 5.4). The parameters are specified for an element method of an entity or free relationship T that executes on a receiver instance t of type Element(T). As expected, the invariant of the current element receiver instance t as well as the invariant of the extent instance tx in which t resides are vulnerable to the execution of the element method (parameter V). The invariant of the current element receiver instance t is also expected in the visible states of the element method (parameter X). In addition, an element method expects in its visible states the invariants of instances of any base type S of which T is not a direct or transitive participant. As opposed to an extent method, an element method cannot expect the invariant of any instance of type Extent<Element(T)⟩ (including the extent instance tx in which the current receiver instance t resides) nor of
Parameters for: extent method of an entity or relationship T

Current receiver: Extent\langle Element(T) \rangle \ tx

\(X\): For any instance Extent\langle Element(T) \rangle \ tx': invariant of tx' and invariants of all instances Element(T) t' in tx'.

For any entity or relationship S such that S \(\neq T\) and T is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent\langle Element(S) \rangle sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Element(S) s in sx.

\(V\): Invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element(T) t in tx.

\(B\): If callee = tx, then invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element(T) t in tx.

If callee = instance Element(T) t in tx, then invariant of t.

If callee = instance Element(T) t in tx and T = relationship with participant base types A and B that is A-benign and/or B-benign, then B-uniqueness and/or A-uniqueness assertion of invariant of tx, resp.

\(E\): Invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element(T) t in tx.

Table 5.8: Parameters X, V, B, and E for entity and relationship extent methods.

any other element instances of type Element(T). This specificity is due to parameters U, C, and B of extent methods, which allow a current extent receiver instance to leave its own invariant as well as the invariants of its element instances broken for the duration of routine invocations on element instances of the same base type as the extent instance but residing in a different extent instance. For example, an extent method executing on the extent instance \(fx1\) in Figure 5.2 may assign to the fields of its element instances \(fx1-1\) and \(fx1-3\) and then invoke an element method on the element instance \(fx2-4\). Since the callee element instance \(fx2-4\) resides in the extent instance \(fx2\) and not in the caller extent instance \(fx1\), neither the invariant of the extent instance \(fx1\) nor the invariants of the element instances \(fx1-1\) and \(fx1-3\) have to be re-established before the invocation of the element method. As a result, the element method cannot expect those invariants to hold. In its final state (parameter E), an element method must establish the invariant of its current element receiver instance \(t\). In addition, the element method must show to preserve the invariant of the extent instance \(tx\) in which \(t\) resides between the initial and final state of the method. This proof obligation accounts for the fact that an element method may break an extent invariant but may not be in the position to re-establish that invariant. If an element method cannot show to preserve an extent invariant, its corresponding code must be moved to an extent method. The proof obligation B, finally, guards the current receiver instance \(t\) against direct call-backs.

Table 5.10 and Table 5.11 specify the parameter X and the parameters V and E for non-interposed element methods of benign and malign relationships, respectively. The parameters are specified for an non-interposed element method of relationship R with the participant base types A and B and the role identifiers a and b, respectively, where the method executes on a receiver instance \(r\) of type Element(R). Since the parameters X, V, B, and E for element methods of benign or malign relationships are largely congruent with the ones for element methods of free relationships, Table 5.10 and Table 5.11 only list the parameters that are affected by a relationship’s benignity and malignity, respec-
5.2 Proof Obligations and Assumptions

Parameters for: element method of an entity or free relationship T

Current receiver: Element(T) t

X: Invariant of t.

For any entity or relationship S such that S ≠ T and T is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent(Element(S)) sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Element(S) s in sx.

V: Invariant of t.

Invariant of instance Extent(Element(T)) tx in which t resides.

B: If callee = t, then invariant of t.

E: Invariant of t.

Preservation of invariant of instance Extent(Element(T)) tx in which t resides.

Table 5.9: Parameters X, V, B, and E for entity and free, non-interposed relationship element methods.

Adjunct parameter for: element method of an A-benign relationship R

Participants: base types A and B and role identifiers a and b, resp.

Current receiver: Element(R) r

X+: B-uniqueness assertion of invariant of instance Extent(Element(R)) rx in which r resides.

Table 5.10: Adjunct for parameter X for unilaterally benign, non-interposed relationship element methods. This parameter conjoins with the parameters listed in Table 5.9 and, if the relationship is inversely benign or malign with the parameters listed in Table 5.10 or Table 5.11, respectively. Furthermore, to accommodate the fact that a relationship’s benignity or malignity is dependent on a relationship’s side, Table 5.10 and Table 5.11 only specify the parameter values from the point of view of one side of the relationship. Thus, to determine the parameters X, V, B, and E for an non-interposed element method of a relationship, the parameters in Table 5.9 must be conjoined, for each side of the relationship that is benign or malign, with the parameters in Table 5.10 or Table 5.10, respectively. For example, the parameters for the A-benign relationship of Figure 5.3 b) are determined by conjoining the parameters in Table 5.9 with the parameters in Table 5.10. As discussed in Section 5.2.2, benign relationships rely on the underlying relation’s uniqueness, and, thus, the adjunct parameter X+ in Table 5.10 includes the side-specific uniqueness assertion of the invariant of the extent instance rx in which the current receiver instance r resides. Malign relationships, on the other hand, may invalidate the invariants of all relationship element instances r' that relate to the same role element instance as the current relationship element receiver instance r.1 Thus, the adjunct parameters V+ and E+ in Table 5.11 include the invariants of those instances r' and require the non-interposed relationship element method to preserve the invariants of those instances r' between the initial and final state of the method, respectively.

Table 5.12 specifies the parameters X, V, B, and E for interposed relationship element

---

1 According to System Invariant 3.6 on page 71, the relationship element instances r' are guaranteed to reside in the same extent instance rx as the relationship element instance r.
Adjunct parameter for: element method of a B-malign relationship R
Participants: base types A and B and role identifiers a and b, resp.
Current receiver: Element(R) r

\( V^+ \): Invariants of all instances Element(R) \( r' \neq r \) such that \( r'.b = r.b \).

\( E^+ \): Preservation of invariants of all instances Element(R) \( r' \neq r \) such that \( r'.b = r.b \).

Table 5.11: Adjuncts for parameters \( V \) and \( E \) for unilaterally malign, non-interposed relationship element methods. These parameters conjoin with the parameters listed in Table 5.9 and, if the relationship is inversely benign or malign with the parameters listed in Table 5.10 or Table 5.11, resp.

Parameters for: element method of a role R.a declared by relationship R
Current receiver: Element(R.a) ra

\( X \): For any entity or relationship S such that S \( \neq R \) and R is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent(Element(S)) sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Element(S) s in sx.

\( V \): Invariants of all instances Element(R) r such that \( r.a = ra \).

Invariant of instance Extent(Element(R)) rx in which all instances Element(R) r with \( r.a = ra \) reside.

\( B \): –

\( E \): Preservation of invariants of all instances Element(R) r such that \( r.a = ra \).

Preservation of invariant of instance Extent(Element(R)) rx in which all instances Element(R) r with \( r.a = ra \) reside.

Table 5.12: Parameters \( X \), \( V \), \( B \), and \( E \) for interposed relationship element methods.

methods. The parameters are specified for an element method of role R.a of relationship R that executes on a receiver instance ra of type Element(R.a). Those parameters are similar to the ones of non-interposed element methods of malign relationships with the difference that no invariants can be imposed on role element instances. As a result, an interposed relationship element method only expects in its visible states the invariants of instances of any base type S of which R is not a direct or transitive participant. The invariants vulnerable to the execution of the method are the invariants of the relationship element instances r that relate to the current role element receiver instance ra as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance rx in which those instances r reside.\(^2\) The invariants of those relationship element instances r and the invariant of the relationship extent instance rx must be shown to be preserved between the initial and final state of the method. The proof obligation \( B \) is vacuous since no invariants for role element instances exist, which would need to be guarded against direct call-backs.

Table 5.13 specifies the parameters \( X \), \( V \), \( B \), and \( E \) for constructors and programmer-defined initializers of entity molds and relationship molds. The parameters are specified for a mold constructor or mold initializer of entity or relationship T that executes on a receiver instance t of type Mold(T). Those parameters differ importantly from the pa-

\(^2\)System Invariant 3.6 on page 71 guarantees that the relationship element instances r reside all in the same relationship extent instance rx.
Parameters for: mold constructor or initializer of an entity or relationship T
Current receiver: Mold(T) \( t \)

- X: None.
- V: None.
- B: n/a
- E: None.

Table 5.13: Parameters X, V, B, and E for entity and non-interposed relationship mold constructors and programmer-defined initializers.

rameters of the routines introduced earlier. As indicated by Table 5.13, mold constructors and initializers neither expect any invariants to hold in their visible states (parameter \( X \)), nor violate any invariants during their execution (parameter \( V \)), nor require to prove certain invariants to hold in their final state (parameter \( E \)). The proof obligation \( B \) is vacuous since mold constructors and initializers are not allowed to invoke any routines (see Table 4.5 on page 85). The choice of the parameters are due to two reasons: (i) that mold constructors and mold initializers can only write to fields of mold instances (see parameter \( U \) in Table 4.3 on page 80) and (ii) that no invariants can depend on fields of mold instances (see parameter \( D \) in Table 4.4 on page 82). As a result, invariants are neither imposed on mold instances nor violated by the executions of mold constructors and initializers. The instantiations of the parameters \( X, V, B, \) and \( E \) in Table 5.13 effectively mean that mold constructors and mold initializers do not obey a visible-state semantics.

The proof obligations \( B \) and \( E \) of the verification technique introduced in this section are all relative to the type of a routine’s current receiver instance. As a result, types can be verified independently from each, facilitating the modular verification of a Rumer program.

5.3 Soundness

To prove our verification technique sound, we must show that the proof obligations \( B \) and \( E \) imposed on the routines of a Rumer program are sufficient to allow those routines to assume the expected invariants \( X \) in their visible states. Before stating the main soundness Theorem 5.35, we introduce auxiliary definitions, propositions, lemmas, and corollaries on which the soundness theorem and its proof rely.

The Matryoshka Principle gives rise to an important lemma that allows us to relate the call stack of an executing Rumer program to the set of expected invariants of an executing routine. Intuitively, this lemma is expressed by Figure 5.2. We first introduce the notion of a call stack and its well-formedness condition and then provide the lemma.

Definition 5.1 (Call stack): A call stack is a sequence of stack frames. A stack frame corresponds to the invocation of a routine \( r \) on an instance \( o \) and is represented by the pair
{(o,r), consisting of the current receiver instance o and the routine name r. A call stack is formally defined as:

\[
\sigma = \begin{cases} 
\epsilon & \text{if empty stack,} \\
\sigma \circ (o, r) & \text{otherwise (\circ denotes push operator).}
\end{cases}
\]

Occasionally, we find it convenient to subscript a stack frame with its index in the call stack, such that the stack frames \( (o', r')_l \) and \( (o, r)_{l-1} \) denote a callee stack frame and its caller stack frame, respectively.

The well-formedness condition on a call stack relies on the notion of a base type (see Definition 3.1 on page 62) and guarantees that the receiver instances’ base types of any consecutive stack frames conform to the reflexive closure of a program’s participants relation. Furthermore, it guarantees, for routine invocation across stratification layers, that there exists no receiver instance of the same base type as the callee’s base type on the call stack. The well-formedness condition does not apply to mold instances since parameter \( \mathcal{C} \) (see Table 4.5 on page 85) leaves the propagation of invocations of mold constructors and initializers unconstrained.

**Definition 5.2 (Well-formed call stack):** A call stack \( \sigma \) is well-formed if and only if for any consecutive stack frames \( (o', r')_l \) and \( (o, r)_{l-1} \) contained in \( \sigma \), where \( (o', r')_l \) denotes the callee stack frame and \( (o, r)_{l-1} \) denotes the caller stack frame, if the callee \( o' \) is not a mold instance, then it either holds that \( \text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o) \) or that \( \text{BaseType}(o') \) is a direct participant of \( \text{BaseType}(o) \), according to the participants relation of the program. In the latter case, it holds further that there exists no preceding stack frame \( (o'', r'')_k \) such that \( 0 < k < l - 1 \) and that \( \text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o') \).

The following proposition guarantees that the execution of a Rumer program only produces well-formed call-stacks:

**Proposition 5.3 (Rumer call stacks are well-formed):** Any call stack \( \sigma \) generated by the execution of a successfully type checked and verified Rumer program is well-formed.

**Proof 5.4:** The proof of Proposition 5.3 proceeds by induction over the execution of a Rumer program where the interesting cases are those cases where stack frames are added to and removed from \( \sigma \). Those cases depend on parameter \( \mathcal{C} \) (see Table 4.5 on page 85) and on the acyclicity of a program’s participants relation (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77). Parameter \( \mathcal{C} \) guarantees that a callee’s base type is either the same as the caller’s base type or a direct participant of the caller’s base type. A program’s participants relation’s acyclicity guarantees that a type cannot be its own direct or transitive participant and hence, for routine invocations across stratification layers, that there exists no previous stack frame with a receiver instance of the same base type as the callee’s base type. □

We can finally relate the set of expected invariants of a callee to the set of expected invariants of its caller:
Lemma 5.5 (Call stack and expected invariants): For any well-formed call stack $\sigma$ and for any consecutive stack frames $(o', r')_i$ and $(o, r)_{i-1}$ contained in $\sigma$, where $(o', r')_i$ denotes the callee stack frame and $(o, r)_{i-1}$ denotes the caller stack frame, if $BaseType(o') \neq BaseType(o)$, then $X(o', r') \subseteq X(o, r) \setminus \{inv_{o'} \mid BaseType(o') = BaseType(o)\}$.

Proof 5.6: We prove Lemma 5.5 by considering the following two cases:

($o'$ is not a mold instance): Then, Lemma 5.5 follows directly from the routine-specific instantiations of framework parameter $X$ (see Table 5.5, Table 5.6, Table 5.7, Table 5.8, Table 5.9, Table 5.10, Table 5.11, and Table 5.12) and from Proposition 5.3 and Definition 5.2. Depending on the routine, parameter $X$ subsumes, at minimum, the invariants of all element and extent instances of a base type of which the current receiver’s base type is not a direct or transitive participant and, at maximum, these invariants plus the invariants of all element and extent instances of the current receiver’s base type. By Proposition 5.3 and Definition 5.2, we know, for any routine invocation that crosses stratification layers, that the callee’s base type must be a (transitive) participant of (any of) its (transitive) caller(s)’s base type(s) and that the callee’s base type is different from the base type(s) of (any of) its (transitive) caller(s). Since a base type can be a direct participant of several base types, the set of base types of which a callee’s base type is a transitive participant must be a superset of the set of base types of which its caller’s base type is a transitive participant. Thus, the maximal set of invariants expected by an invoked routine must be a subset of the set of invariants expected by its calling routine minus the invariants of all element and extent instances of the calling routine’s receiver’s base type.

($o'$ is a mold instance): Then, $r'$ must be a mold constructor or initializer. According to Table 5.13, $X(o', r')$ is the empty set, and, thus, Lemma 5.5 holds trivially.

Lemma 5.5 indicates for routine invocations that cross stratification layers that the callee’s expected invariants are a subset of the caller’s expected invariants. We make use of this subset relationship in the soundness proof as it allows us to conclude that the expected invariants of the callee hold if we can show that the ones of the caller hold. Lemma 5.5 does not hold for routine invocations that remain in the same stratification layer since, in some of these cases, the set of expected invariants of a callee may actually be bigger than the set of expected invariants of its caller. This is the case, for example, if a programmer-defined extent constructor invokes an extent method on its current extent receiver instance. As opposed to the extent constructor, the extent method expects the invariant of the extent instance under construction to hold in the extent method’s visible states.

The main soundness Theorem 5.35 relies on the notion of semi-visible states of a routine execution that was introduced by Summers et al. [105]. The semi-visible states of a routine execution capture significant “mid-points” of the execution that are important for reasoning about the soundness of the verification technique in the presence of routine invocations.
**Definition 5.7 (Semi-visible states):** For any routine execution \( r \) on an instance \( o \), the semi-visible states of \( r \)'s execution are the following states:

- the initial state of \( r \)'s execution
- the pre-states and post-states of direct routine invocations made during \( r \)'s execution
- the final state of \( r \)'s execution.

If the semi-visible states are numbered from zero, starting at the initial state, then routine invocations are made between any odd semi-visible state (except for the final state) and its subsequent even semi-visible state. Between any even semi-visible state and its subsequent odd semi-visible state no routines are invoked and control remains within the receiver \( o \).

To show that the proof obligations of a routine are sufficient to allow the routine to assume the expected invariants \( X \) in its visible states, the main soundness Theorem 5.35 reasons about the invariants that may potentially be lost between the semi-visible states of the routine execution. Before defining the notion of a lost invariant, we define the notions of a fresh instance and generating routine and introduce the concept of an invalidator. Furthermore, we provide the definitions of the two kinds of proof obligations our verification technique employs.

A fresh instance is defined as follows:

**Definition 5.8 (Fresh instance):** An instance \( o \) is fresh in a semi-visible state \( s_i \) if \( o \) is the current receiver instance of a (possibly default) extent constructor or mold constructor \( r \) and \( s_i \) is \( r \)'s initial state.

A generating routine is a routine that instantiates new element or extent instances and is defined as follows:

**Definition 5.9 (Generating routine):** A routine \( r \) that executes on an instance \( o \) is a generating routine in any of the following cases:

- If \( r \) is a (possibly default) extent constructor. Then, \( r \)'s current extent receiver instance \( o \) is said to be generated by \( r \). The generated instance \( o \) is fresh in \( r \)'s initial state \( s_{initial} \) and exists in state \( s_{initial}+1 \).
- If \( r \) is an extent constructor or extent method that includes invocations of the built-in addition operator (see Table 3.17 on page 68 and Table 3.18 on page 69). Then, the element instances that are instantiated by those invocations are said to be generated by \( r \). Any element instance generated by \( r \) in this way does not exist in the semi-visible state \( s_i \) that precedes the invocation of the built-in addition operator, but exists in state \( s_{i+1} \).

Next, we define the proof obligations of establishing an invariant and preserving an invariant which our verification technique employs:

**Definition 5.10 (Establishing an invariant):** For a routine \( r \) that executes on an instance
5.3 Soundness

o, the proof obligation to establish the invariant \( \text{inv}_{o'} \) of an instance \( o' \) in the semi-visible state \( s_i \) of \( r \) requires to show that the invariant \( \text{inv}_{o'} \) holds in \( s_j \).

**Definition 5.11 (Preserving an invariant):** For a routine \( r \) that executes on an instance \( o \), the proof obligation to preserve the invariant \( \text{inv}_{o'} \) of an instance \( o' \) between the semi-visible states \( s_i \) and \( s_j \) (where \( i \leq j \)) of \( r \) requires to show that if the instance \( o' \) exists but is not fresh in \( s_i \) and its invariant \( \text{inv}_{o'} \) holds in \( s_i \), then the invariant \( \text{inv}_{o'} \) holds in \( s_j \).

The following proposition points out that generated element instances always reside in the current extent receiver instance of their generating routine:

**Proposition 5.12 (Containment of generated element instances):** Any element instance generated by a generating routine \( r \) resides in the current receiver instance of \( r \) or, if the generated instance is a role element instance, is related by relationship element instances that reside in the current receiver instance of \( r \).

**Proof 5.13:** According to Definition 5.9, \( r \) must be an extent constructor or extent method, and the element instances are generated by invocations of the built-in addition operator during \( r \)'s execution. We know by Table 4.3 on page 80 that invocations of the built-in addition operator (see Table 3.17 on page 68 and Table 3.18 on page 69) are only allowed to be invoked on the current receiver instance of the invoking routine. As a result, the newly instantiated entity and relationship element instances reside in \( r \)'s current receiver instance and, if \( r \)'s current receiver instance is a relationship extent instance, the newly instantiated role element instances are related by relationship element instances that reside in \( r \)'s current receiver instance.

The following definition introduces the concept of an invalidator. This concept allows us to describe the framework parameters \( \mathbb{U} \) and \( \mathbb{D} \) from the perspective of a specific instance.

**Definition 5.14 (Invalidator):** For any instance \( o \), its invalidators are those instances that can write to locations on which the invariant of \( o \) depends.

For the verification technique presented in this chapter, the invalidators are as follows:

**Proposition 5.15 (Set of Invalidators):** For the possible instances in a successfully type checked and verified Rumer program the invalidators for such an instance \( o \) are:

- For an application instance \( o \): the application instance \( o \).
- For a relationship extent instance \( o \): the relationship extent instance \( o \), all relationship element instances residing in \( o \), and all role element instances related by the relationship element instances residing in \( o \).
- For a relationship element instance \( o \) that is neither A-malign nor B-malign (first four rows in Table 5.4): the relationship element instance \( o \), \( o \)'s role element instances, and the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides.
- For a relationship element instance \( o \) of a relationship \( R \) with participant base types A and B and role identifiers a and b, respectively, that is A-malign and/or B-malign (last
five rows in Table 5.4): the relationship element instance \( o \), \( o \)'s role element instances, all relationship element instances that reside in the relationship extent instance of \( o \) and that have the role element instance \( o.a \) and/or \( o.b \), respectively, as participant, and the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides.

- For a role element instance \( o \): \( n/a \).
- For an entity extent instance \( o \): the entity extent instance \( o \) and all entity element instances residing in \( o \).
- For an entity element instance \( o \): the entity element instance \( o \) and the entity extent instance in which \( o \) resides.

**Proof 5.16:** An instance’s invalidators follow directly from the parameters \( U \) (see Table 4.3 on page 80) and \( D \) (see Table 4.4 on page 82), from the fact that extent instances are mutually disjoint (see System Invariant 3.6 on page 71), and from the differentiation between free, benign, and malign relationships (see Table 5.4). Parameters \( U \) and \( D \) delimit, relative to a current receiver instance, the set of invariants that may depend on the locations to which the routine can write. System Invariant 3.6 and Table 5.4 provide further guarantees on heap separation and thus diminish the set of possibly vulnerable invariants. System Invariant 3.6 guarantees that an element instance cannot reside in several different extent instances and, thus, that modifications of an element instance by the extent instance in which the element instance resides compromise at most the extent invariant of that same extent instance. Table 5.4 guarantees for free and benign relationships that their element instances do not share interposed fields and, thus, that modifications of an element instance compromise at most the element invariant of that same element instance.

The following corollary follows from Proposition 5.15 and makes explicit that mold instances are not invalidators for any other instances:

**Corollary 5.17 (Molds are not invalidators):** There exist no instances for whose invariants a mold instance can be an invalidator.

**Proof 5.18:** Corollary 5.17 is immediate from Proposition 5.15.

We can finally introduce the notion of a *lost invariant*:

**Definition 5.19 (Lost invariants):** For any routine execution \( r \) on an instance \( o \) and any two semi-visible states \( s_i \) and \( s_j \) (where \( i \leq j \)) of \( r \), an invariant \( inv_{o'} \) of an instance \( o' \) is lost between \( s_i \) and \( s_j \) in either of the following ways:

- By invalidation: \( inv_{o'} \) held in \( s_i \), but no longer holds in \( s_j \).
- By instantiation: \( o' \) was either fresh in \( s_i \) or did not exist in \( s_i \), but exists in \( s_j \), and \( inv_{o'} \) does not hold in \( s_j \).

Some routines in Rumer impose the proof obligation to show preservation of certain invariants (see Table 5.9, Table 5.11, and Table 5.12). The following lemma relates the
5.3 Soundness

notion of preserving an invariant to the one of losing an invariant. It shows in particular that invariants can still be lost between two semi-visible states even though they are preserved between those states.

**Lemma 5.20 (Invariant preservation and lost invariants):** For any routine execution $r$ on an instance $o$ and any two semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_j$ (where $i \leq j$) of $r$, if an invariant $inv_{o'}$ of an instance $o'$ is preserved between $s_i$ and $s_j$, then it can only be lost between $s_i$ and $s_j$ if the instance $o'$ was either fresh in $s_i$ or did not exist in $s_i$.

**Proof 5.21:** According to Definition 5.19, an invariant $inv_{o'}$ of an instance $o'$ can be lost between two semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_j$ in one of the following two ways: (i) $o'$ exists in both states and satisfies its invariant in $s_i$ but not in $s_j$ or (ii) $o'$ only exists in $s_j$ and does not satisfy its invariant in $s_j$. In the first case (i), the invariant $inv_{o'}$ cannot be lost between $s_i$ and $s_j$ since it holds in $s_i$ and since its preservation (see Definition 5.11) guarantees that it also holds in $s_j$. In the second case (ii), however, the invariant $inv_{o'}$ may indeed be lost between $s_i$ and $s_j$. If the instance $o'$ does not exist in $s_i$ or is fresh in $s_i$, then the preservation of $inv_{o'}$ (see Definition 5.11) between $s_i$ and $s_j$ is too weak a guarantee to actually assert that $inv_{o'}$ also holds in $s_j$.

The following lemma provides an upper bound on the invariants lost between two consecutive semi-visible states between which control remains within a routine. It combines Definition 5.14, Proposition 5.15, and Definition 5.19:

**Lemma 5.22 (Invalidators and lost invariants):** For any routine execution $r$ on an instance $o$, consider any consecutive semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$ of $r$’s execution between which no routine is invoked (i.e., $s_i$ is even and thus control remains within $r$). Then, at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$.

**Proof 5.23:** According to Definition 5.19, invariants can only be lost between $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$ either by invalidation or instantiation. We consider each case separately:

**(invalidation):** Since Lemma 5.22 only considers consecutive semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$ of $r$’s execution between which control remains within the current receiver instance $o$, an invariant of an instance $o'$ can only be invalidated if $o$ writes to any of the locations of $o'$ between $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$. According to Definition 5.14, $o$ is an invalidator for such an instance $o'$.

**(instantiation):** Since Lemma 5.22 only considers consecutive semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$ of $r$’s execution between which control remains within the current receiver instance $o$, an invariant can only be lost due to instantiation if $r$ is a generating routine and if the invariant’s instance is generated by the routine. According to Definition 5.9, $r$ must either be (i) a (possibly default) extent constructor with the initial state $s_i$ or (ii) an extent constructor or extent method that includes invocations of the built-in addition operators in-between the semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$. The possibly lost
invariants due to instantiation are: for the first case $(i)$, the invariant of $r$’s current receiver instance, and, for the second case $(ii)$, the invariants of all those entity and relationship element instances that are instantiated through invocations of the built-in addition operators between $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$. In the first case $(i)$, we know by Proposition 5.15 that $r$’s current receiver instance is also its own invalidator. In the second case $(ii)$, we know by Proposition 5.12 that the newly instantiated entity and relationship element instances reside in $r$’s current receiver instance, which is also an invalidator for those instances according to Proposition 5.15. In the second case $(ii)$, the instantiation of new element instances may also lead to losing invariants due to invalidation. In the case of relationship element instantiation, the invariants of all those relationship element instances that reside in the current relationship extent receiver instance $o$ and that share any role element instances with the newly instantiated relationship element instances may be invalidated by writes of the relationship addition operator to the role element fields (see Table 3.18 on page 69). As shown previously in the first case of this proof, $o$ is an invalidator for any such instances.

The following proposition refines Lemma 5.22 with regard to the uniqueness assertions of extent invariants. In particular, the proposition guarantees for the execution of a non-interposed relationship element method that the uniqueness assertions of the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which the current relationship element receiver instance resides also hold in the final state of the method execution provided that they held in the initial state:

**Proposition 5.24 (Invalidation of uniqueness assertions):** For the execution of any non-interposed relationship element method $r$ on any relationship element instance $o$ and for all semi-visible states $s_i$ of $r$’s execution, the uniqueness assertions of the invariant of the relationship extent instance $ox$ in which $o$ resides cannot be invalidated between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_i$.

**Proof 5.25:** A routine can only invalidate the uniqueness assertions of the invariant of a relationship extent instance between the routine’s semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_i$ by writing to the content of the extent instance or by (possibly transitively) invoking a routine that writes to the content of the extent instance. According to Table 4.3 on page 80, only the extent instance itself is allowed to directly write to its content. Furthermore, according to parameter $C$ (see Table 4.5 on page 85) and by acyclicity of a program’s participants relation (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), an element instance is not allowed to (possibly transitively) invoke a method on the extent instance in which the element instance resides. Thus, a non-interposed relationship element method cannot invalidate the uniqueness assertions of the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which the current relationship element receiver instance resides between the method’s semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_i$.

To state the main soundness Theorem 5.35 we find it further convenient to introduce the concept of a *guarantor*. Such a guarantor allows us to describe the framework parameter
from the perspective of the instance whose invariant gets established in relation to the instances that are responsible for the establishment.

**Definition 5.26 (Guarantor):** For any instance \( o \), its guarantors are those instances that guarantee to establish the invariant of \( o \) in the final state of any routine executing on such a guarantor.

For our verification technique, the guarantors are as follows:

**Proposition 5.27 (Set of guarantors):** For the possible instances in a successfully type checked and verified Rumer program the guarantors for such an instance \( o \) are:

- For an application instance \( o \): the application instance \( o \).
- For a relationship extent instance \( o \): the relationship extent instance \( o \).
- For a relationship element instance \( o \): the relationship element instance \( o \) and the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides.
- For a role element instance \( o \): n/a.
- For an entity extent instance \( o \): the entity extent instance \( o \).
- For an entity element instance \( o \): the entity element instance \( o \) and the entity extent instance in which \( o \) resides.

**Proof 5.28:** An instance’s guarantors follow directly from parameter \( E \) (see corresponding routine-specific instantiations in Table 5.5, Table 5.6, Table 5.7, Table 5.8, Table 5.9, Table 5.10, Table 5.11, and Table 5.12) as well as from the fact that extent instances are mutually disjoint (see System Invariant 3.6 on page 71). The latter guarantees that element instances reside in exactly one extent instance.

The following corollary follows from Proposition 5.27 and makes explicit that mold instances are not guarantors for any other instances:

**Corollary 5.29 (Molds are not guarantors):** There exist no instances for whose invariants a mold instance can be a guarantor.

**Proof 5.30:** Corollary 5.29 is immediate from Proposition 5.27.

The following corollary points out that a guarantor for an instance is always also an invalidator for that instance:

**Corollary 5.31 (Guarantors are invalidators):** For any instance \( o \), if \( o' \) is a guarantor for \( o \), then \( o' \) also is an invalidator for \( o \).

**Proof 5.32:** Corollary 5.31 is immediate from Proposition 5.15 and Proposition 5.27.

In general, the converse of Corollary 5.31 does not hold. However, the following lemma indicates that under certain circumstances invalidators for instances are also guarantors for these instances.
**Lemma 5.33 (Some invalidators are guarantors):** For any routine execution $r$ on an instance $o$ and for any instance $o'$ that is instantiated during $r$'s execution (i.e., $o'$ was either fresh in $r$'s initial state or did not exist in $r$'s initial state, but exists in $r$'s final state), if $o$ is an invalidator for $o'$, then $o$ must also be a guarantor for $o'$.

**Proof 5.34:** An instance $o'$ can only be instantiated during the execution of a routine $r$ on an instance $o$ if $r$ is a generating routine that generates $o'$ (see Definition 5.9) or if $r$ directly or transitively invokes a generating routine that generates $o'$. We consider each case separately:

**(r is generating routine):** According to Definition 5.9, the generated instance $o'$ must either be (i) an extent instance or (ii) an element instance. In the first case (i), $r$ must be a (possibly default) extent constructor and $o = o'$. According to Proposition 5.15 and Proposition 5.27, $o$ is both its own invalidator and guarantor. In the second case (ii), $r$ must be an extent constructor or extent method, and, according to Proposition 5.12, $o'$ resides in $o$ or, if $o'$ is a role element instance, is related by relationship element instances that reside in $o$. According to Proposition 5.15, $o$ is an invalidator for all the element instances that reside in it, and, according to Proposition 5.27, $o$ is also a guarantor for any of these element instances.

**(r is caller of generating routine):** If the generated instance $o'$ is an extent instance, then $r$ must directly or transitively invoke a (possibly default) extent constructor on the instance $o'$. According to Proposition 5.15, the only invalidators for $o'$ are $o'$ itself and all element instances residing in $o'$, and, if $o'$ is a relationship extent instance, all role element instances related by the relationship element instances residing in $o'$. According to Definition 3.1 on page 62, these invalidators are all of the same base type: $\text{BaseType}(o')$. Furthermore, we know by parameter $\mathbb{C}$ (see Table 4.5 on page 85) that either $o' = o$ or that the base type of the callee $o'$ is a direct or transitive participant of the base type of the caller $o$. However, since $o'$ is fresh in the constructor’s initial state, $o \neq o'$. By acyclicity of a program’s participants relation (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), we know further that $\text{BaseType}(o') \neq \text{BaseType}(o)$. Since invalidators for $o'$ must be of $\text{BaseType}(o')$, $o$ cannot be an invalidator for $o'$, and Lemma 5.33 follows vacuously. Otherwise, the generated instance $o'$ must be an element instance that resides in an extent instance $o''$, and $r$ must directly or transitively invoke an extent constructor or extent method on the instance $o''$. According to Proposition 5.15, the only invalidators for such an element instance $o'$ is $o'$, the extent instance $o''$ in which $o'$ resides, and, if $o'$ is a relationship element instance, the role element instances related by $o'$ (and, if $o'$ is an element instance of an A-malign and/or B-malign relationship $R$ with participant base types $A$ and $B$ and role identifiers $a$ and $b$, respectively, the relationship element instances that reside in the extent instance $o''$ and that have the role element instance $o',a$ and/or $o',b$, respectively, as participant). Of these invalidators, only $o'$ itself and its extent instance $o''$ are guarantors for $o'$. According to Definition 3.1 on page 62, these invalidators and guarantors are all of the same base type: $\text{BaseType}(o')$. Furthermore, we know by parameter $\mathbb{C}$ (see Table 4.5 on
(5.3 Soundness)

page 85) that either \( o'' = o \) or that the base type of the callee \( o'' \) is a direct or transitive participant of the base type of the caller \( o \). If \( o'' = o \), then we know that \( o \) is both an invalidator and guarantor for \( o' \) since \( o'' \) is both an invalidator and guarantor for \( o' \). If the base type of the callee \( o'' \) is a direct or transitive participant of the base type of the caller \( o \), we can conclude by acyclicity of a program’s participants relation that \( \text{BaseType}(o'') \neq \text{BaseType}(o) \). Since invalidators for \( o' \) must be of \( \text{BaseType}(o'') \), \( o \) cannot be an invalidator for \( o' \), and Lemma 5.33 follows vacuously.

The main soundness theorem for our verification technique finally becomes:

**Theorem 5.35 (Soundness):** For any routine execution \( r \) on an instance \( o \) in a successfully type checked and verified Rumer program, if the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) hold in the initial state of \( r \)'s execution, then:

1. in all semi-visible states \( s_i \) of \( r \)'s execution:
   1. at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_i \);
   2. if \( s_i \) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \), the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold;
2. in the final state \( s_{\text{final}} \) of \( r \)'s execution: the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are preserved (since \( s_0 \)) and also established for any of these instances for which \( o \) is a guarantor, and the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) hold.

**Proof 5.36:** We prove Theorem 5.35 by strong induction on the number \( k \) of transitive routine invocations made during the execution of a routine \( r \). Let \( k \) be an arbitrary natural number of transitive routine invocations. By induction, we can assume that the theorem holds for any natural number \( j \) of transitive routine invocations such that \( j < k \) and we must show that it also holds for \( k \) transitive routine invocations. We consider each routine kind in Rumer separately (see Table 4.5 on page 85 for an overview of different routine kinds):

**Case 1 (Application action):** For the execution of an application action \( r \) on the singleton application instance \( o \), we assume that the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) hold in \( r \)'s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for \( k \) transitive routine invocations made during \( r \)'s execution:

1. To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index \( i \) of semi-visible states of \( r \)'s execution:
   1. \((i = 0)\): Base case:
      1. Immediate since no invariants can yet have been lost.
      2. Vacuous since the initial state is not a pre-state of a routine invocation.
   2. \((i = n + 1)\): Let \( n \) be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the \( n \)-th semi-visible state \( s_n \) and we must show that it holds in state \( s_{n+1} \). There are two cases to be considered:
(n + 1 is odd): Control remains within \( r \) between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

(a) By inner induction, we know that (1) (a) holds in \( s_n \) and, thus, that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_n \). By Lemma 5.22, we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \). Consequently, we can conclude that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

(b) If \( s_{n+1} \) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \), then, according to parameter \( C \) (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we know that the callee \( o' \) must be any of the following instances, for any relationship or entity \( T \):

\( o' = o \): The invoked routine \( r' \) must be an application action. According to Table 5.5, this routine expects the invariant of the current application receiver instance \( o' \) as well as the invariants of all extent instances and element instances of entities or relationships declared in a Rumer program. Since \( o' = o \) and since both the called routine and the calling routine are of the same kind, the expected invariants \( \mathbb{X}_{(o',r')} \) are exactly the invariants \( \mathbb{X}_{(o,r)} \). The invariants \( \mathbb{X}_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, this is the invariant of the application receiver instance \( o \) only. Given the proof obligation \( \mathbb{P}_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.5) to re-establish the invariant of the application receiver instance \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants \( \mathbb{X}_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( o' = \text{instance of base type T, but not mold instance} \): The base type of the callee \( o' \) is a direct or transitive participant of the base type of the caller \( o \). By Proposition 5.3 and Definition 5.2 it thus holds that \( \text{BaseType}(o') \neq \text{BaseType}(o) \). As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, this is the invariant of the application receiver instance \( o \) only. Since the invariants \( \mathbb{X}_{(o,r)} \) are known to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption, we thus know that the invariants \( \mathbb{X}_{o,r} \setminus \{ \text{inv}_{o''} \mid \text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o) \} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \). Since \( \text{BaseType}(o') \neq \text{BaseType}(o) \) and since the invariants \( \mathbb{X}_{o,r} \setminus \{ \text{inv}_{o''} \mid \text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o) \} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \), we conclude by Lemma 5.5 that the invariants \( \mathbb{X}_{o',r'} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( o' = \text{instance of mold type} \): The invoked routine \( r' \) must be a mold constructor or mold initializer. According to Table 5.13, these routines do not expect any invariants to hold in their initial and final
states, and, thus, the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{o', r'}$ trivially hold in $s_{n+1}$.

**$n + 1$ is even:** A direct routine invocation $r'$ on an instance $o'$ is made between $s_{n}$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(a) By inner induction, we know that (1) holds in $s_{n}$ and, thus, that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_n$ and that the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{o', r'}$ hold in $s_n$. Since there must be strictly fewer than $k$ routine invocations made during the execution of $r'$, we know, by outer induction, that Theorem 5.35 holds for the execution of $r'$. Since the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{o', r'}$ hold in $s_n$, we know further that (1) and (2) hold for $r'$. In particular, we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o'$ is an invalidator are lost between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and that the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{o', r'}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$ for any of these instances for which $o'$ is a guarantor. According to Lemma 5.20, we know further that of the invariants for which $o'$ is an invalidator, since they are preserved by $r'$, only those invariants can be lost between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ by $r'$ whose instance was either fresh in $s_n$ or did not exist in $s_n$. By Lemma 5.33, however, we know that for the instances that were either fresh in $s_n$ or did not exist in $s_n$, $o'$ is not only an invalidator but also a guarantor. Since the invariants of any of these instances for which $o'$ is a guarantor are established in $s_{n+1}$, no invariants can be lost between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$, and, thus, we can conclude that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(b) Vacuous since state $s_{n+1}$ is not a pre-state of a routine invocation.

**(2):** As shown previously in part (1), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{final}$. According to Proposition 5.15, this is the invariant of the application receiver instance $o$ only. The proof obligation $\mathcal{E}_{(o, r)}$ (see Table 5.5) ensures that the invariant of $o$ is established in $s_{final}$ and, thus, guaranteed to be preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{final}$. According to Proposition 5.27, the application receiver instance $o$ is also its only guarantor. Since the invariant of $o$ is guaranteed to be established in $s_{final}$ by the proof obligation $\mathcal{E}_{(o, r)}$ (see Table 5.5), the invariants of all instances for which $o$ is a guarantor are guaranteed to be established in $s_{final}$. According to Table 5.5, the invariant of the current application receiver instance $o$ as well as the invariants of all extent instances and element instances of entities or relationships declared in a Rumer program are expected to hold in the visible states of $r$'s execution. By assumption, we know that the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{(o, r)}$ hold in $s_0$. Since the invariant of $o$ is the only invariant that can be lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{final}$ and since the invariant of $o$ is guaranteed to be preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{final}$ and established in $s_{final}$, the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{(o, r)}$ are guaranteed to hold in $s_{final}$. 

115
Case 2 (Default relationship extent constructor): For the execution of a default relationship extent constructor $r$ on a relationship extent instance $o$, we assume that the invariants $X_{(o,r)}$ hold in $r$’s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for $k$ transitive routine invocations made during $r$’s execution:

(1): Since a default relationship constructor cannot invoke any other routines (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we prove (1) by investigating the only two semi-visible states of $r$’s execution:

(Initial state):
(a) Immediate since no invariants can yet have been lost.
(b) Vacuous since the initial state is not a pre-state of a routine invocation.

(Final state):
(a) Since $s_{\text{final}}$ is the immediate successor state of $s_0$ and, thus, control remains within $r$ between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$, we know by Lemma 5.22 that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$.
(b) Vacuous since the final state is not a pre-state of a routine invocation.

(2): As shown previously in part (1), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Proposition 5.15, the relationship extent receiver instance $o$ is an invalidator for itself and for all the relationship element instances that reside in $o$. However, since the relationship extent receiver instance of a default relationship extent constructor is empty (see Table 3.20 on page 71), the relationship extent receiver instance $o$ is its only invalidator, and, thus, its invariant is the only invariant that can get lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. The proof obligation $E_{(o,r)}$ (see Table 5.6) ensures that the invariant of $o$ is established in $s_{\text{final}}$ and, thus, guaranteed to be preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Proposition 5.27, the relationship extent receiver instance $o$ is a guarantor for itself as well as for all the relationship element instances that reside in $o$. However, since the relationship extent receiver instance of a default relationship extent constructor is empty (see Table 3.20 on page 71), the relationship extent receiver instance $o$ is its only guarantor. Since the invariant of $o$ is guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$ by the proof obligation $E_{(o,r)}$ (see Table 5.6), the invariants of all instances for which $o$ is a guarantor are guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Table 5.6, the invariant of $o$ is not expected to hold in the visible states of $r$’s execution. By assumption, we know that the invariants $X_{(o,r)}$ hold in $s_0$. Since the invariant of $o$ is the only invariant that can be lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$, the invariants $X_{(o,r)}$ are guaranteed to hold in $s_{\text{final}}$.

Case 3 (Default entity extent constructor): The proof is analogous to the proof of a default relationship extent constructor (see Case 2) since default relationship extent constructors and default entity extent constructors have analogous instantiations for all the framework parameters.
Case 4 (Relationship extent constructor): For the execution of a relationship extent constructor \( r \) on a relationship extent instance \( o \), we assume that the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) hold in \( r \)'s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for \( k \) transitive routine invocations made during \( r \)'s execution. The proof is in parts identical to the proof of Case 1. Therefore, we only prove the parts that are specific to the execution of a relationship extent constructor and refer to the proof of Case 1 otherwise. We consider an extent constructor of a relationship \( R \) with the participant base types \( A \) and \( B \) and the role identifiers \( a \) and \( b \), respectively:

(1): To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index \( i \) of semi-visible states of \( r \)'s execution:

\( (i = 0): \) See proof of Case 1.

\( (i = n + 1): \) Let \( n \) be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the \( n \)-th semi-visible state \( s_n \) and we must show that it holds in state \( s_{n+1} \). There are two cases to be considered:

\( (n + 1 \text{ is odd}): \) Control remains within \( r \) between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

(a) See proof of Case 1.

(b) If \( s_{n+1} \) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \), then, according to parameter \( C \) (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we know that the callee \( o' \) must be any of the following instances:

\( (o' = o): \) The invoked routine \( r' \) must be a relationship extent method. According to Table 5.8, this routine expects the invariants of all extent instances and element instances of \( R \) as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since \( o' = o \) and since both the called routine and the calling routine are declared by the same base type, the expected invariants of the called routine (see Table 5.8) relate to the ones of the calling routine (see Table 5.7) as follows: \( X_{(o',r')} = X_{(o,r)} \cup \{inv_o\} \cup \{inv_{o'} | o' \in o\} \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1)(a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \). Given the proof obligation \( B_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.7) to re-establish the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( (o' = \text{instance of type Element}(R)): \) The invoked routine \( r' \) must be a non-interposed relationship element method. In accordance with the
different relationship kinds (see Table 5.4), we consider the following cases:

\( (R = \text{free}) \): According to Table 5.9, the called method expects the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance \( o' \) as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since both the called routine and the calling routine are declared by the same base type, the expected invariants of the called routine (see Table 5.9) relate to the ones of the calling routine (see Table 5.7) as follows:

\[
\mathcal{X}_{(o',r')} = (\mathcal{X}_{(o,r)} \setminus \{ \text{inv}_{o'} | \text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o) \}) \cup \{ \text{inv}_{o'} \}.
\]

The invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption, and it holds that \( \text{inv}_{o'} \in \mathcal{X}_{(o,r)} \) if \( o' \notin o \). As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \). Given the proof obligation \( \mathcal{B}_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.7) to re-establish the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o' \) if \( o' \) resides in \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( (R = \text{A-malign}) \): Identical to Case \( (R = \text{free}) \) since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

\( (R = \text{B-malign}) \): Identical to Case \( (R = \text{free}) \) since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

\( (R = \text{A-malign-B-malign}) \): Identical to Case \( (R = \text{free}) \) since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

\( (R = \text{A-benign}) \): According to Table 5.9 and Table 5.10, the called method expects the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance \( o' \), the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant, as well as the B-uniqueness assertion of the invariant of the extent instance \( o x' \) in which \( o' \) resides. Since both the called routine and the calling routine are declared by the same base type, the expected invariants and uniqueness assertions of the called routine (see Table 5.9 and Table 5.10) relate to the expected invariants of the calling routine (see Table 5.7) as follows:

\[
\mathcal{X}_{(o',r')} = (\mathcal{X}_{(o,r)} \setminus \{ \text{inv}_{o'} | \text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o) \}) \cup \{ \text{B-unique}_{ox'} \}.
\]

The invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption, and it holds that \( \text{inv}_{o'} \in \mathcal{X}_{(o,r)} \land \text{inv}_{ox'} \in \mathcal{X}_{(o,r)} \) if \( o' \notin o \). As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for
which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \). Given the proof obligation \( B_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.7) to re-establish the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o' \) as well as the B-uniqueness assertion of the invariant of \( o \) if \( o' \) resides in \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants and uniqueness assertions \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( (R = A\text{-benign}–B\text{-malign}) \): Identical to previous case since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

\( (R = B\text{-benign}) \): Analogous to Case \( (R = A\text{-benign}) \) but with inverted sides.

\( (R = A\text{-malign}–B\text{-benign}) \): Identical to previous case since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

\( (R = A\text{-benign}–B\text{-benign}) \): Combination of Case \( (R = A\text{-benign}) \) and Case \( (R = B\text{-benign}) \).

\( (o' = \text{instance of type Element}\langle R.a \rangle) \): The invoked routine \( r' \) must be an interposed relationship element method. According to Table 5.12, this routine expects the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since both the called routine and the calling routine are declared by the same base type, the expected invariants of the called routine (see Table 5.12) relate to the ones of the calling routine (see Table 5.7) as follows: \( X_{(o',r')} = (X_{(o,r)} \setminus \{\text{inv}_{o'} \mid \\ BaseType(o') = BaseType(o)\}) \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \). Thus, we are guaranteed that the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( (o' = \text{instance of type Element}\langle R.b \rangle) \): Identical to previous case.

\( (o' = \text{instance of base type A, but not mold instance}) \): The base type of the callee \( o' \) must be a direct participant of the base type of the caller \( o \). By Proposition 5.3 and Definition 5.2 it thus holds that \( BaseType(o') \neq BaseType(o) \). As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants
of the relationship element instances residing in $o$. Since the invariants $X_{o,r}$ are known to hold in $s_0$ by assumption, we thus know that the invariants $X_{o,r} \setminus \{\text{inv}_{o''} | \text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o)\}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$. Since $\text{BaseType}(o') \neq \text{BaseType}(o)$ and since the invariants $X_{o,r} \setminus \{\text{inv}_{o''} | \text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o)\}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$, we conclude by Lemma 5.5 that the invariants $X_{o',r'}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$.

**Case 5 (Entity extent constructor):** For the execution of an entity extent constructor $r$ on an entity extent instance $o$, we assume that the invariants $X_{o,r}$ hold in $r$’s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for $k$ transitive routine invocations made during $r$’s execution. The proof is in parts identical to the proof of Case 1. Furthermore, the proof is in parts analogous to the one of a relationship extent constructor (Case 4) since the two constructors only differ in parameter $C$, but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters. Therefore, we only prove the parts that are specific to the execution of a entity extent constructor and refer to the proof of Case 1.
for the generic parts of the proof and to the proof of Case 4 for the parts of the proof that are analogous to the one of a relationship extent constructor. We consider an extent constructor of an entity E:

(1): To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index \(i\) of semi-visible states of \(r\)'s execution:

(i = 0): See proof of Case 1.

(i = n + 1): Let \(n\) be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the \(n\)-th semi-visible state \(s_n\) and we must show that it holds in state \(s_{n+1}\). There are two cases to be considered:

(n + 1 is odd): Control remains within \(r\) between \(s_n\) and \(s_{n+1}\).

(a) See proof of Case 1.

(b) If \(s_{n+1}\) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \(r'\) on an instance \(o'\), then, according to parameter \(C\) (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we know that the callee \(o'\) must be any of the below listed instances. For some of the cases, the proofs are analogous to the corresponding ones of a relationship extent constructor (see Case 4) since they only consider the framework parameters \(X\) and \(B\) as well as the concept of an invalidator (parameters \(U\) and \(D\)). As pointed out previously, the two constructors differ in the framework parameter \(C\), but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters.

(\(o' = o\)): Analogous to proof of Case 4.

(\(o' = \text{instance of type Element}(E)\)): Analogous to proof of Case 4, Subcase (\(R = \text{free}\)).

(\(o' = \text{instance of mold type}\)): See proof of Case 1.

(n + 1 is even): See proof of Case 1.

(2): This proof is analogous to the one of a relationship extent constructor (see Case 4) since the proof only considers the framework parameters \(E\) and \(X\) as well as the concepts of an invalidator (parameters \(U\) and \(D\)) and guarantor (parameter \(E\)). As pointed out previously, the two constructors differ in the framework parameter \(C\), but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters.

Case 6 (Relationship extent method): For the execution of a relationship extent method \(r\) on a relationship extent instance \(o\), we assume that the invariants \(X_{(a,r)}\) hold in \(r\)'s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for \(k\) transitive routine invocations made during \(r\)'s execution. The proof is in parts identical to the proof of Case 1. Furthermore, the proof resembles the one of a relationship extent constructor (Case 4) as relationship extent constructors and relationship extent methods share the same framework parameters \(V, B, E, C, U,\) and \(D\). However, since the two routines differ in the framework parameter \(X\) and since every routine-specific part of the proof relies on this parameter, we provide the full proof of a relationship extent method and refer to the proof of Case 1 for the
generic parts of the proof. We consider an extent constructor of a relationship \( R \) with the participant base types \( A \) and \( B \) and the role identifiers \( a \) and \( b \), respectively:

\[ (1): \] To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index \( i \) of semi-visible states of \( r \)'s execution:

\( (i = 0) \): See proof of Case 1.

\( (i = n + 1) \): Let \( n \) be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the \( n \)-th semi-visible state \( s_n \) and we must show that it holds in state \( s_{n+1} \). There are two cases to be considered:

\( (n + 1 \text{ is odd}) \): Control remains within \( r \) between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

\( (a) \): See proof of Case 1.

\( (b) \): If \( s_{n+1} \) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \), then, according to parameter \( C \) (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we know that the callee \( o' \) must be any of the following instances:

\( (o' = o) \): The invoked routine \( r' \) must be a relationship extent method. According to Table 5.8, this routine expects the invariants of all extent and element instances of \( R \) as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \not\equiv R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since \( o' = o \) and since both the called routine and the calling routine are of the same kind, the expected invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) are exactly the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) \( (a) \), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \). Given the proof obligation \( \mathbb{B}_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.8) to re-establish the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( (o' = \text{instance of type Element}(R)) \): The invoked routine \( r' \) must be a non-interposed relationship element method. In accordance with the different relationship kinds (see Table 5.4), we consider the following cases:

\( (R = \text{free}) \): According to Table 5.9, the called method expects the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance \( o' \) as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \not\equiv R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since both the called routine and the calling routine are declared by the same base type, the expected
5.3 Soundness

Invariants of the called routine (see Table 5.9) relate to the ones of the calling routine (see Table 5.8) as follows: \( X_{(o',r')} = (X_{(o,r)} \setminus \{inv_{o'} \mid BaseType(o'') = BaseType(o)\}) \cup \{inv_{o'}\} \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption, and it holds that \( inv_{o'} \in X_{(o,r)} \). As shown previously in part (1)(a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \). Given the proof obligation \( B_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.8) to re-establish the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o' \) if \( o' \) resides in \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( (R = A\text{-malign}) \): Identical to Case \( (R = free) \) since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

\( (R = B\text{-malign}) \): Identical to Case \( (R = free) \) since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

\( (R = A\text{-malign–B-malign}) \): Identical to Case \( (R = free) \) since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

\( (R = A\text{-benign}) \): According to Table 5.9 and Table 5.10, the called method expects the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance \( o' \), the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant, as well as the B-uniqueness assertion of the invariant of the extent instance \( ax' \) in which \( o' \) resides. Since both the called routine and the calling routine are declared by the same base type, the expected invariants and uniqueness assertions of the called routine (see Table 5.9 and Table 5.10) relate to the expected invariants of the calling routine (see Table 5.8) as follows: \( X_{(o',r')} = (X_{(o,r)} \setminus \{inv_{o'} \mid BaseType(o'') = BaseType(o)\}) \cup \{inv_{o'}\} \cup \{B\text{-unique}_{ax'}\} \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption, and it holds that \( inv_{o'} \in X_{(o,r)} \wedge inv_{ax'} \in X_{(o,r)} \). As shown previously in part (1)(a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \( o \). Given the proof obligation \( B_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.8) to re-establish the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o' \) as well as the B-uniqueness assertion of the invariant of \( o \) if \( o' \) resides in \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants and uniqueness assertions \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).
hold in $s_{n+1}$.

**($R = A$-benign–B-malign):** Identical to previous case since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

**($R = B$-benign):** Analogous to Case ($R = A$-benign) but with inverted sides.

**($R = A$-malign–B-benign):** Identical to previous case since malignity does not affect the set of expected invariants (see Table 5.11).

**($R = A$-benign–B-benign):** Combination of Case ($R = A$-benign) and Case ($R = B$-benign).

**($o' = \text{instance of type Element}(R.a)$):** The invoked routine $r'$ must be an interposed relationship element method. According to Table 5.12, this routine expects the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships $T$ (with $T \neq R$) of which $R$ is not a direct or transitive participant. Since both the called routine and the calling routine are declared by the same base type, the expected invariants of the called routine (see Table 5.12) relate to the ones of the calling routine (see Table 5.8) as follows: $X_{o',r'} = (X_{o,r} \setminus \{inv_{o''} \mid BaseType(o'') = BaseType(o)\})$. The invariants $X_{o,r}$ are guaranteed to hold in $s_0$ by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$. According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance $o$ as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in $o$. Thus, we are guaranteed that the invariants $X_{o',r'}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$.

**($o' = \text{instance of type Element}(R.b)$):** Identical to previous case.

**($o' = \text{instance of base type A, but not mold instance}$):** The base type of the callee $o'$ must be a direct participant of the base type of the caller $o$. By Proposition 5.3 and Definition 5.2 it thus holds that $BaseType(o') \neq BaseType(o)$. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$. According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance $o$ as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in $o$. Thus, we are guaranteed that the invariants $X_{o',r'}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$.

**($o' = \text{instance of base type B, but not mold instance}$):** Identical to previous case.
(\(o' = \text{instance of mold type}\): See proof of Case 1.

(n + 1 is even): See proof of Case 1.

(2): As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which \(o\) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \(o\) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \(o\). The proof obligation \(E(o,r)\) (see Table 5.8) ensures that the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \(o\) as well as the invariants of all relationship element instances residing in \(o\) are established in \(s_{\text{final}}\) and, thus, guaranteed to be preserved between \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\). According to Proposition 5.27, the relationship extent receiver instance \(o\) is a guarantor for the relationship extent receiver instance \(o\) as well as for the invariants of all relationship element instances residing in \(o\). Since the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \(o\) as well as the invariants of all relationship element instances residing in \(o\) are guaranteed to be established in \(s_{\text{final}}\) by the proof obligation \(E(o,r)\) (see Table 5.8), the invariants of all instances for which \(o\) is a guarantor are guaranteed to be established in \(s_{\text{final}}\). According to Table 5.8, the following invariants \(\mathcal{X}(o,r)\) are expected to hold in the visible states of \(r\)'s execution: the invariants of all extent instances and element instances of \(R\) as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \(T\) (with \(T \neq R\)) of which \(R\) is not a direct or transitive participant. By assumption, we know that the invariants \(\mathcal{X}(o,r)\) hold in \(s_0\). Since the invariant of the relationship extent receiver instance \(o\) as well as the invariants of the relationship element instances residing in \(o\) are the only invariants that can be lost between the semi-visible states \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\) and since those invariants are guaranteed to be preserved between \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\) and established in \(s_{\text{final}}\), the invariants \(\mathcal{X}(o,r)\) are guaranteed to hold in \(s_{\text{final}}\).

**Case 7 (Entity extent method):** For the execution of an entity extent method \(r\) on an entity extent instance \(o\), we assume that the invariants \(\mathcal{X}(o,r)\) hold in \(r\)'s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for \(k\) transitive routine invocations made during \(r\)'s execution. The proof is in parts identical to the proof of Case 1. Furthermore, the proof is in parts analogous to the one of a relationship extent method (Case 6) since the two methods only differ in the framework parameter \(C\), but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters. Moreover, the proof resembles the one of an entity extent constructor (Case 5) as entity extent constructors and entity extent methods share the same framework parameters \(V, B, E, C, U,\) and \(D\), and only differ in the framework parameter \(X\). However, since every routine-specific part of the proof relies on the parameter \(X\), we cannot leverage the resemblance of entity extent methods to entity extent constructors for the proof. Therefore, the proof of an entity extent method only relies on the proofs of an application action (Case 1) and a relationship extent method (Case 6). We refer to the former for the generic parts of the proof and to the latter for the parts of the proof that are analogous to the one of a relationship extent method. We consider an extent method of an entity \(E\):
(1): To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index \( i \) of semi-visible states of \( r \)’s execution:

(\( i = 0 \)): See proof of Case 1.

(\( i = n + 1 \)): Let \( n \) be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the \( n \)-th semi-visible state \( s_n \) and we must show that it holds in state \( s_{n+1} \). There are two cases to be considered:

(n + 1 is odd): Control remains within \( r \) between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

(a) See proof of Case 1.

(b) If \( s_{n+1} \) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \), then, according to parameter \( C \) (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we know that the callee \( o' \) must be any of the below listed instances. For some of the cases, the proofs are analogous to the corresponding ones of a relationship extent method (see Case 6) since they only consider the framework parameters \( X \) and \( B \) as well as the concept of an invalidator (parameters \( U \) and \( D \)). As pointed out previously, the two methods differ in the framework parameter \( C \), but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters.

(\( o' = o \)): Analogous to proof of Case 6.

(\( o' = \text{instance of type Element}(E) \)): Analogous to proof of Case 6, Sub-case (\( R = \text{free} \)).

(\( o' = \text{instance of mold type} \)): See proof of Case 1.

(n + 1 is even): See proof of Case 1.

(2): This proof is analogous to the one of a relationship extent method (see Case 6) since the proof only considers the framework parameters \( E \) and \( X \) as well as the concepts of an invalidator (parameters \( U \) and \( D \)) and guarantor (parameter \( E \)). As pointed out previously, the two methods differ in the framework parameter \( C \), but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters.

Case 8 (Mold constructor or initializer): We collate the proofs of non-interposed relationship mold constructors and initializers as well as of entity mold constructors and initializers since these routines share the same framework parameters \( X, V, B, E, \) and \( C \) and since their receiver instances are invalidators (determined by the framework parameters \( U \) and \( D \)) for the same set of instances. For the execution of a mold constructor or mold initializer \( r \) on a mold instance \( o \), we assume that the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) hold in \( r \)’s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for \( k \) transitive routine invocations made during \( r \)’s execution.

(1): Since a mold constructor or initializer cannot invoke any other routines (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we prove (1) by investigating the only two semi-visible states of \( r \)’s execution:
(Initial state):

(a) Immediate since no invariants can yet have been lost.
(b) Vacuous since the initial state is not a pre-state of a routine invocation.

(Final state):

(a) Since $s_{\text{final}}$ is the immediate successor state of $s_0$ and, thus, control remains within $r$ between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$, we know by Lemma 5.22 that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$.
(b) Vacuous since the final state is not a pre-state of a routine invocation.

(2): According to Corollary 5.17 and Corollary 5.29, the mold receiver instance $o$ is neither an invalidator nor a guarantor for any instances. Consequently, the invariants of all instances for which $o$ is an invalidator and guarantor are trivially preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$ and trivially established in $s_{\text{final}}$, respectively. According to Table 5.13, $X_{(a,r)}$ is the empty set, and, thus, the invariants $X_{(a,r)}$ hold trivially in $s_{\text{final}}$.

Case 9 (Non-interposed relationship element method): For the execution of a non-interposed relationship element method $r$ on a relationship element instance $o$, we assume that the invariants $X_{(a,r)}$ hold in $r$’s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for $k$ transitive routine invocations made during $r$’s execution. The proof is in parts identical to the proof of Case 1. Therefore, we only prove the parts that are specific to the execution of a non-interposed relationship element method and refer to the proof of Case 1 otherwise. We consider a non-interposed relationship element method of a relationship $R$ with the participant base types $A$ and $B$ and the role identifiers $a$ and $b$, respectively:

(1): To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index $i$ of semi-visible states of $r$’s execution:

(i = 0): See proof of Case 1.

(i = n + 1): Let $n$ be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the $n$-th semi-visible state $s_n$ and we must show that it holds in state $s_{n+1}$. There are two cases to be considered:

(n + 1 is odd): Control remains within $r$ between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(a) See proof of Case 1.

(b) If $s_{n+1}$ is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation $r'$ on an instance $o'$, then, according to parameter $C$ (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we know that the callee $o'$ must be any of the following instances:

(o' = o): The invoked routine $r'$ must be a non-interposed relationship element method. In accordance with the different relationship kinds (see Table 5.4), we consider the following cases:

(R = free): According to Table 5.9, the called method expects the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance $o'$
as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since \( o' = o \) and since both the called routine and the calling routine are of the same kind, the expected invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) are exactly the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides. Given the proof obligation \( B_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.9) to re-establish the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

**\( R = A\text{-benign} \):** According to Table 5.9 and Table 5.10, the called method expects the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance \( o' \), the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant, as well as the B-uniqueness assertion of the invariant of the extent instance in which \( o' \) resides. Since \( o' = o \) and since both the called routine and the calling routine are of the same kind, the expected invariants and uniqueness assertions \( X_{(o',r')} \) are exactly the invariants and uniqueness assertions \( X_{(o,r)} \). The invariants and uniqueness assertions \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides. By the proof obligation \( B_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.9), we are guaranteed that the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \) is re-established in \( s_{n+1} \). By Proposition 5.24, we are furthermore guaranteed that the B-uniqueness assertion of the invariant of the extent instance in which \( o \) resides is not invalidated between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \) and, thus, that this assertion still holds in \( s_{n+1} \). Consequently, we are guaranteed that the invariants and uniqueness assertions \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

**\( R = B\text{-benign} \):** Analogous to Case \( R = A\text{-benign} \) but with inverted sides.

**\( R = A\text{-benign–B-benign} \):** Combination of Case \( R = A\text{-benign} \)
and Case \( R = \text{B-benign} \).

\((R = \text{A-malign})\): According to Table 5.9 and Table 5.11, the called method expects the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance \( o' \) as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since \( o' = o \) and since both the called routine and the calling routine are of the same kind, the expected invariants \( X_{(o',r)} \) are exactly the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the following invariants: the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \), the invariants of all relationship element instances of \( R \) that reside in the same relationship extent instance as \( o \) and that have the role element instance \( o.a \) as participant, and the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides. Given the proof obligation \( B_{(o,r)} \) (see Table 5.11) to re-establish the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \), we are guaranteed that the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\((R = \text{B-malign})\): Analogous to Case \((R = \text{A-malign})\) but with inverted sides.

\((R = \text{A-malign–B-malign})\): Combination of Case \((R = \text{A-malign})\) and Case \((R = \text{B-malign})\).

\((R = \text{A-benign–B-malign})\): Combination of Case \((R = \text{A-benign})\) and Case \((R = \text{B-malign})\).

\((R = \text{A-malign–B-benign})\): Combination of Case \((R = \text{A-malign})\) and Case \((R = \text{B-benign})\).

\((o' = \text{instance of type Element}(R.a))\): The invoked routine \( r' \) must be an interposed relationship element method. According to Table 5.12, this routine expects the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since both the called routine and the calling routine are declared by the same base type, the expected invariants of the called routine (see Table 5.12) relate to the ones of the calling routine (see Table 5.9) as follows: \( X_{(o',r')} = (X_{(o,r)} \setminus \{inv_{o'} \mid \text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o)\}) \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the following invariants: the
invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \), the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides, and, if \( R \) is A-malign and/or B-malign (last five rows in Table 5.4), the invariants of all relationship element instances of \( R \) that reside in the same relationship extent instance as \( o \) and that have the role element instance \( o.a \) and/or \( o.b \), respectively, as participant. Since these possibly lost invariants are all invariants of instances of \( \text{BaseType}(o) \), we are guaranteed that the invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{(o', r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\((o' = \text{instance of type Element}(R,b))\): Identical to previous case.

\((o' = \text{instance of base type A, but not mold instance})\): The base type of the callee \( o' \) must be a direct participant of the base type of the caller \( o \). By Proposition 5.3 and Definition 5.2 it thus holds that \( \text{BaseType}(o') \neq \text{BaseType}(o) \). As shown previously in part (1)(a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the following invariants: the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \), the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides, and, if \( R \) is A-malign and/or B-malign (last five rows in Table 5.4), the invariants of all relationship element instances of \( R \) that reside in the same relationship extent instance as \( o \) and that have the role element instance \( o.a \) and/or \( o.b \), respectively, as participant. Since the invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{(o, r)} \) are known to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption, we thus know that the invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{o, r} \setminus \{\text{inv}_{o'} \mid \text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o)\} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \). Since \( \text{BaseType}(o') \neq \text{BaseType}(o) \) and since the invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{o, r} \setminus \{\text{inv}_{o'} \mid \text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o)\} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \), we conclude by Lemma 5.5 that the invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{o', r'} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\((o' = \text{instance of base type B, but not mold instance})\): Identical to previous case.

\((o' = \text{instance of mold type})\): See proof of Case 1.

\((n + 1 \text{ is even})\): See proof of Case 1.

\( (2) \): In accordance with the different relationship kinds (see Table 5.4), we consider the following cases:

\((R = \text{free})\): As shown previously in part (1)(a), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{\text{final}} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \) as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides. The proof obligation \( \mathcal{E}_{(o, r)} \) (see Table 5.9) ensures that the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \( o \) is established in \( s_{\text{final}} \) and that the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides is preserved between \( s_0 \) and \( s_{\text{final}} \). Thus, the invariants of all instances
5.3 Soundness

for which $o$ is an invalidator are guaranteed to be preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Proposition 5.27, the relationship element receiver instance $o$ is only a guarantor for itself. Since the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance $o$ is guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$ by the proof obligation $E_{(o,r)}$ (see Table 5.9), the invariants of all instances for which $o$ is a guarantor are guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Table 5.9, the following invariants $\mathcal{X}_{(o,r)}$ are expected to hold in the visible states of $r$'s execution: the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance $o$ as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships $T$ (with $T \neq R$) of which $R$ is not a direct or transitive participant. By assumption, we know that the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{(o,r)}$ hold in $s_0$. Since the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance $o$ as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which $o$ resides are the only invariants that can be lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$ and since those invariants are guaranteed to be preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$ and the invariant of $o$ is guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$, the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{(o,r)}$ are guaranteed to hold in $s_{\text{final}}$.

(R = A-benign): As shown previously in part (1)(a), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Proposition 5.15, these are the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance $o$ as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which $o$ resides. The proof obligation $E_{(o,r)}$ (see Table 5.9) ensures that the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance $o$ is established in $s_{\text{final}}$ and that the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which $o$ resides is preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. Thus, the invariants of all instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are guaranteed to be preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Proposition 5.27, the relationship element receiver instance $o$ is only a guarantor for itself. Since the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance $o$ is guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$ by the proof obligation $E_{(o,r)}$ (see Table 5.9), the invariants of all instances for which $o$ is a guarantor are guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Table 5.9 and Table 5.10, the following invariants and uniqueness assertions $\mathcal{X}_{(o,r)}$ are expected to hold in the visible states of $r$'s execution: the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance $o$, the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships $T$ (with $T \neq R$) of which $R$ is not a direct or transitive participant, as well as the B-uniqueness assertion of the invariant of the extent instance in which $o$ resides. By assumption, we know that the invariants and uniqueness assertions $\mathcal{X}_{(o,r)}$ hold in $s_0$. Since the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance $o$ as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which $o$ resides are the only invariants that can be lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$ and since those invariants are guaranteed to be preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$ and the invariant of $o$ is guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$, the invariants and uniqueness assertions $\mathcal{X}_{(o,r)}$ are guaranteed to hold in $s_{\text{final}}$. 

131
(\(R = \text{B-benign}\)): Analogous to Case \(R = \text{A-benign}\) but with inverted sides.

(\(R = \text{A-benign–B-benign}\)): Combination of Case \(R = \text{A-benign}\) and Case \(R = \text{B-benign}\).

(\(R = \text{A-malign}\)): As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which \(o\) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the following invariants: the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \(o\), the invariants of all relationship element instances of \(R\) that reside in the same relationship extent instance as \(o\) and that have the role element instance \(o.a\) as participant, and the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \(o\) resides. The proof obligation \(E_{(o,r)}\) (see Table 5.9 and Table 5.10) ensures that the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \(o\) is established in \(s_{\text{final}}\) and that the invariants of all relationship element instances of \(R\) that reside in the same relationship extent instance as \(o\) and that have the role element instance \(o.a\) as participant as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \(o\) resides are preserved between \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\). Thus, the invariants of all instances for which \(o\) is an invalidator are guaranteed to be preserved between \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\). According to Proposition 5.27, the relationship element receiver instance \(o\) is only a guarantor for itself. Since the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \(o\) is guaranteed to be established in \(s_{\text{final}}\) by the proof obligation \(E_{(o,r)}\) (see Table 5.9), the invariants of all instances for which \(o\) is a guarantor are guaranteed to be established in \(s_{\text{final}}\). According to Table 5.9, the following invariants \(X_{(o,r)}\) are expected to hold in the visible states of \(r\)'s execution: the invariant of the current relationship element receiver instance \(o\) as well as the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \(T\) (with \(T \neq R\)) of which \(R\) is not a direct or transitive participant. By assumption, we know that the invariants \(X_{(o,r)}\) hold in \(s_0\). From all the invariants that can be lost between the semi-visible states \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\) only the invariant of the relationship element receiver instance \(o\) is expected to hold in the visible states of \(r\)'s execution. Since this invariant is guaranteed to be established in \(s_{\text{final}}\), the invariants \(X_{(o,r)}\) are guaranteed to hold in \(s_{\text{final}}\).

(\(R = \text{B-malign}\)): Analogous to Case \(R = \text{A-malign}\) but with inverted sides.

(\(R = \text{A-malign–B-malign}\)): Combination of Case \(R = \text{A-malign}\) and Case \(R = \text{B-malign}\).

(\(R = \text{A-benign–B-malign}\)): Combination of Case \(R = \text{A-benign}\) and Case \(R = \text{B-malign}\).

(\(R = \text{A-malign–B-benign}\)): Combination of Case \(R = \text{A-malign}\) and Case \(R = \text{B-benign}\).

Case 10 (Entity element method): For the execution of an entity element method \(r\) on an entity element instance \(o\), we assume that the invariants \(X_{(o,r)}\) hold in \(r\)'s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for \(k\) transitive routine invocations made during \(r\)'s execution. The proof is in parts identical to the proof of Case 1. Furthermore,
the proof is in parts analogous to the one of a free non-interposed relationship element method (Case 9) since the two methods only differ in the framework parameter $C$, but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters. Therefore, we only prove the parts that are specific to the execution of an entity element method and refer to the proof of Case 1 for the generic parts of the proof and to the proof of Case 9 for the parts of the proof that are analogous to the one of a free non-interposed relationship element method. We consider an entity element method of an entity $E$:

(1): To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index $i$ of semi-visible states of $r$'s execution:

$(i = 0)$: See proof of Case 1.

$(i = n + 1)$: Let $n$ be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the $n$-th semi-visible state $s_n$ and we must show that it holds in state $s_{n+1}$. There are two cases to be considered:

$(n + 1$ is odd): Control remains within $r$ between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(a) See proof of Case 1.

(b) If $s_{n+1}$ is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation $r'$ on an instance $o'$, then, according to parameter $C$ (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we know that the callee $o'$ must be any of the below mentioned instances. For some of the cases, the proofs are analogous to the corresponding ones of a free non-interposed relationship element method (Case 9) since they only consider the framework parameters $X$ and $B$ as well as the concept of an invalidator (parameters $U$ and $D$). As pointed out previously, the two methods differ in the framework parameter $C$, but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters.

$(o' = o)$: Analogous to proof of Case 9, Subcase $(R = free)$.

$(o' = instance of mold type)$: See proof of Case 1.

$(n + 1$ is even): See proof of Case 1.

(2): This proof is analogous to the one of a free non-interposed relationship element method (Case 9, Subcase $(R = free)$) since the proof only considers the framework parameters $E$ and $X$ as well as the concepts of an invalidator (parameters $U$ and $D$) and guarantor (parameter $E$). As pointed out previously, the two methods differ in the framework parameter $C$, but have analogous instantiations for the remaining framework parameters.

Case 11 (Interposed relationship element method): For the execution of an interposed relationship element method $r$ on a role element instance $o$, we assume that the invariants $X_{(o,r)}$ hold in $r$’s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for $k$ transitive routine invocations made during $r$’s execution. The proof is in parts identical to the proof of Case 1. Therefore, we only prove the parts that are specific to the execution of an interposed relationship element method and refer to the proof of Case 1 otherwise. We
consider an interposed relationship element method of a relationship R with the participant base types A and B and the role identifiers a and b, respectively, where the method is interposed into the role R.a:

(1): To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index \( i \) of semi-visible states of \( r \)'s execution:

\( i = 0 \): See proof of Case 1.

\( i = n+1 \): Let \( n \) be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the \( n \)-th semi-visible state \( s_n \) and we must show that it holds in state \( s_{n+1} \). There are two cases to be considered:

(n + 1 is odd): Control remains within \( r \) between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

(a) See proof of Case 1.

(b) If \( s_{n+1} \) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \), then, according to parameter \( C \) (see Table 4.5 on page 85), we know that the callee \( o' \) must be any of the following instances:

\( o' = o \): The invoked routine \( r' \) must be an interposed relationship element method. According to Table 5.12, this routine expects the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships \( T \) (with \( T \neq R \)) of which \( R \) is not a direct or transitive participant. Since \( o' = o \) and since both the called routine and the calling routine are of the same kind, the expected invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) are exactly the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \). The invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are guaranteed to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption. As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the following invariants: the invariants of all relationship element instances \( O'' \) of \( R \) that have the role element receiver instance \( o \) as a participant as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( O'' \) reside. Thus, we are guaranteed that the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \).

\( o' = \text{instance of base type A, but not mold instance} \): The base type of the callee \( o' \) must be a direct participant of the base type of the caller \( o \). By Proposition 5.3 and Definition 5.2 it thus holds that \( \text{BaseType}(o') \neq \text{BaseType}(o) \). As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to Proposition 5.15, these are the following invariants: the invariants of all relationship element instances \( O'' \) of \( R \) that have the role element receiver instance \( o \) as a participant as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which \( O'' \) reside. Since the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) are known to hold in \( s_0 \) by assumption, we thus know that the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \setminus \{ \text{inv}_{o''} | \text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o) \} \) hold
in $s_{n+1}$. Since $\text{BaseType}(o') \neq \text{BaseType}(o)$ and since the invariants $\mathbb{X}_{o,r} \setminus \{\text{inv}_{o''} \mid \text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o)\}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$, we conclude by Lemma 5.5 that the invariants $\mathbb{X}_{o',r'}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$.

(o' = instance of base type B, but not mold instance): Identical to previous case.

(o' = instance of mold type): See proof of Case 1.

(n + 1 is even): See proof of Case 1.

(2): As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Proposition 5.15, these are the following invariants: the invariants of all relationship element instances $O''$ of $R$ that have the role element receiver instance $o$ as a participant as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which $O''$ reside. The proof obligation $E_{(o,r)}$ (see Table 5.12) ensures that the invariants of all relationship element instances $O''$ as well as the invariant of the relationship extent instance in which $O''$ resides are preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. Thus, the invariants of all instances for which $o$ is an invalidator are guaranteed to be preserved between $s_0$ and $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Proposition 5.27, the role element receiver instance $o$ is not a guarantor for any instance, and, thus, the invariants of all instances for which $o$ is a guarantor are trivially guaranteed to be established in $s_{\text{final}}$. According to Table 5.12, the invariants of all extent and element instances of entities or relationships $T$ (with $T \neq R$) of which $R$ is not a direct or transitive participant are expected to hold in the visible states of $r$’s execution. By assumption, we know that the invariants $\mathbb{X}_{(o,r)}$ hold in $s_0$. Since none of these expected invariants are lost by $r$, the invariants $\mathbb{X}_{(o,r)}$ are guaranteed to hold in $s_{\text{final}}$. \hfill \Box
Ownership in the Rumer context

To enlarge the range of verifiable invariants, we extend our verification technique with selective ownership. In this chapter, we first introduce selective ownership (Section 6.2) and then present an extended version of our verification technique that also accommodates invariants that depend on locations of owned instances (Section 6.3). We conclude the chapter with an overview of related work on ownership and object-oriented verification techniques (Section 6.4).

6.1 Rationale

The Composite program in Figure 3.11 on page 57 gives rise to an interesting, but challenging invariant: the element invariant of relationship Composite (line 30) constrains not only Composite relationship element instances but also the Parent extent instances related by those relationship element instances. In line with our invariant categorization introduced in [71], we refer to this kind of invariant as an inter-relationship invariant as it relates instances of different relationship types. As pointed out in Section 4.3.2 on page 81, these kinds of invariants do not comply with the admissibility criterion specified by the Matryoshka Principle (see Table 4.4 on page 82) and can thus neither be specified nor verified using the verification technique introduced in Chapter 5.

To facilitate the verification of inter-relationship invariants, we extend our verification technique with selective ownership. The idea to utilize object ownership to mitigate the adverse affects of aliasing for program understanding [106, 107] has a long-standing tradition. Ownership Types [93, 94, 95, 97] and Universe Types [12, 96, 98, 99, 100] have incorporated those ideas into a programming language’s type system to grant a designated owner object unique access to other objects. Object ownership has not only proved viable for easing program understanding but also for thread synchronization [108], memory management [109], and program verification [12, 14, 16, 110]. The latter has been shown for the verification of multi-object invariants in the context of the Universe Type system [12, 14, 16] as well as in the context of a variant of an ownership type system [110].

Verification techniques that are based on Universe Types [12, 14, 16] leverage the fact that Universe Types both impose a tree topology on a program’s heap and enforce encapsula-
tion of owned objects [98]. The ownership technique [12, 16], in particular, exploits the following guarantees made by the Universe Type system for program verification: that (i) invariants only depend on locations of the invariant-declaring object or of the owned object, that (ii) modifications of an owned object’s fields are initiated by the object’s owner (“owner-as-modifier discipline” [96]), and that (iii) owned objects can only invoke impure methods on objects with the same owner or on objects they own themselves. The first and the second property give an owner whose invariant relies on an owned object’s fields the chance to re-establish the invariant upon modifications of owned objects. The third property prevents call-backs into owners from within their owned objects or any objects reachable from them.

The guarantees made by the Matryoshka Principle are similar to the ones made by the Universe Type system: that (i) invariants only depend on locations of the invariant-declaring type and that (ii) there are no transitive call-backs. A comparison with the guarantees made by the Universe Type system listed above reveals that the Matryoshka Principle does not support the notion of a “unique owner” and, hence, does not facilitate the declaration of invariants that depend on an owned instance’s locations. As detailed in Section 4.4.2 on page 87, the Matryoshka Principle is less stringent than the Universe Type system and neither imposes a tree topology on a program’s heap nor forbids entity or relationship instances to change their relationship participation.

In this chapter, we show how we can leverage the guarantees made by the Matryoshka Principle and superimpose the notion of a “unique owner” on top of the Matryoshka Principle. Selective ownership allows a programmer to selectively inject ownership into a program’s heap. More specifically, it allows a programmer to make a designated relationship instance the unique owner of any of its participating instances. Making a relationship instance the owner of any of its participating instances allows the invariant of the relationship instance to depend on any of the locations of the owned participating instances. Since modifications of the owned participating instances’ locations are guaranteed to be initiated by the unique owner, the owning relationship instance is given a chance to re-establish its invariant upon modifications of the owned participant instances. Moreover, the ownership of the relationship instance is guaranteed not to be encountered in inconsistent states since transitive call-backs are prevented by the underlying Matryoshka Principle. We call this form of ownership selective because it is more specific in scope than the ownership established by ownership type systems. Selective ownership only imposes unique ownership on the respective participant of the owning relationship, but not on any transitive participants of the relationship, nor on any other existing instances in the program heap. As a result, selective ownership facilitates a scheme in which owned and shared instances coexist. In this scheme, the parts of the heap that are unaffected by ownership are not subject to the single ownership restriction, and entity and relationship instances in those parts enjoy the possibility to participate in several relationship instances and to change their relationship participation.
6.2 Selective ownership

In this section, we introduce *selective ownership*. We first illustrate the general idea underlying selective ownership based on an example and then discuss the extensions necessary to the Rumer language introduced earlier to incorporate selective ownership as well as the effects of selective ownership on program executions. The current Rumer prototype compiler does not support selective ownership.

6.2.1 General idea

We illustrate the general idea underlying selective ownership on the Rumer Composite program. Figure 6.1 shows the Rumer Composite program introduced in Figure 3.5 on page 45 extended with selective ownership declarations. As depicted by Figure 3.7 on page 48, we represent a composite in Rumer by an instance of relationship Composite, which has the root component of the composite as its root participant and a Parent extent instance denoting the hierarchical structure of the composite as its tree participant.

The extent method `createComposite()` on line 5 instantiates a new Composite element instance and adds it to its current extent receiver instance. The element method `appendComposite()` on line 10 allows a programmer to append a composite to the current receiver composite at any point in the composite tree. The to-be-inserted Composite element instance \( c \) as well as the point \( p \) in the tree are passed as arguments to the method. Method `appendComposite()` relies on the element methods `appendComponent()` and `appendSubComposite()` (see line 13 and line 16, resp.) for its implementation, which rely in turn on Parent’s extent method `append()` (see line 26). We discuss those methods in more detail in Section 7.1.2 on page 193. The Composite’s element invariant declared on line 18 restricts a Composite element instance’s tree Parent extent instance from a forest of trees to a tree (see Section 3.2.5 on page 55 for further details). Since this invariant depends on locations of a Composite element instance’s tree Parent extent instance, it is not admissible according to Table 4.4 on page 82.

To facilitate the verification of a Composite’s element invariant, we make use of selective ownership and make a Composite element instance become the unique owner of its tree Parent extent instance. Selective ownership uses type *modifiers* to express ownership of an instance relative to a current receiver instance. The use of type modifiers (rather than type parameters) results in an ownership type system that is similarly lightweight as the Universe Type system \([12, 96, 98, 99, 100]\). The participants clause of the Composite relationship uses the owned modifier to indicate that a Composite element instance owns the Parent extent instance that the element instance relates. In Figure 6.1, for example, a new Composite element instance with an owned Parent extent instance is instantiated on line 8. A Composite element instance’s ownership of its tree Parent extent instance guarantees that only the Composite element instance itself can invoke methods on its tree Parent extent instance. For example, the invo-
// A Composite element instance owns its tree Parent extent instance.
relationship Composite
  participants (Component root, owned Extent<Parent> tree) {
  
  extent void createComposite(Component c)
  // New Composite element instance becomes owner of
  // new Parent extent instance.
  { these.add(new Composite(c, new owned Extent<Parent>())); }
  
  void appendComposite(Composite c, Component p) {
    { this.appendComponent(c.root, p); this.appendSubComposite(c.tree, c.root); }
  }
  
  void appendComponent(Component c, Component p)
  { this.tree.append(c, p); } // Invocation admissible: this is owner of tree.
  
  void appendSubComposite(query Set<Parent> c, Component p) { ... }
  
  invariant // Invariant admissible: this is owner of tree.
  !(this.root isElementOf this.tree.child) &
  (!(this.tree.isEmpty()) => this.root isElementOf this.tree.parent) &
  this.tree.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.parent == this.root).child ==
  this.tree.child;
}

relationship Parent participants (Component child, Component parent) {
  extent void append(Composite c, Component p) { ... }
  ...
}

Figure 6.1: Rumer Composite program extending the versions shown in Figure 3.5 on page 45 and Figure 3.11 on page 57 with selective ownership. The element invariant declared on line 18 is admissible since a Composite element instance is the owner of the Parent extent instance related by the Composite element instance. See complete Composite pattern specification in Section 7.1.2 on page 193.

dication of the extent method append() on the Parent extent instance referred to by this.tree on line 14 is ownership-admissible since this is the owner of the extent instance. Thanks to a Composite element instance’s ownership of its Parent extent instance, the element invariant of relationship Composite becomes admissible. Since modifications of the Parent extent instance’s locations are guaranteed to be initiated by the owning Composite element instance, the Composite element instance is given a chance to re-establish its invariant upon any such modifications.

To reduce the annotation burden put on the programmer, we use default modifiers if no modifiers are given by the programmer. Since selective ownership permits a hybrid ownership scheme in which owned and shared instances coexist, the default modifier is shared. For the Composite program shown in Figure 6.1 this practice consequently means that both the Parent element instances residing in a Composite element instance’s tree Parent extent instance and the Component element instances related by those Parent element instances are shared. As a result, those instances can freely participate in several relationship instances (of possibly different relationship types) and change their relationship participation. Furthermore, modifications of those instances can
be initiated by any of the relationship instances in which they participate.

To permit a hybrid ownership scheme, a type declaration has to be formulated so as to leave the decision of whether a particular instance of this type is shared or owned to the caller-site of the type. For example, relationship `Parent` in Figure 6.1 uses default modifiers for its type declarations, and only the relationship `Composite` indicates that its element instances will become the owners of their tree `Parent` extent instances. Since ownership is only fixed at the caller-site, but left open at the callee-site, this scheme gives rise to situations in which owned instances are perceived as “supposedly shared” instances. In Section 6.2.3 we discuss what precautions are taken to prevent accidental leaking of “supposedly shared” instances.

The `Composite` relationship declared in Figure 6.1 only imposes ownership on its tree `Parent` extent instance. Alternatively, it is possible to impose ownership not only on an extent instance but also on all the element instances that reside in the extent instance. For the example of the Composite program shown in Figure 6.1, extent and element ownership can be achieved by the following declaration:

```plaintext
relationship Composite participates (Component root, owned Extent<owned Parent>)
```

This declaration indicates that a `Composite` element instance owns its `Parent` extent instance as well as all the `Parent` element instances contained in the `Parent` extent instance. We refer to the first form of ownership that targets only an extent instance, but excludes the element instances contained in the extent instance, as `exclusive` ownership, and we refer to the second form of ownership that targets an extent as well as all the element instances contained in the extent instance as `inclusive` ownership. Whereas it is possible to impose ownership on an extent instance without imposing ownership on the element instances residing in the extent instance, it is not possible to impose ownership on element instances without imposing ownership on the extent instance in which the element instances reside. This restriction is due to the fact that fields of element instances can be written to by any extent method that executes on the extent instance in which the element instances reside (see parameter \( \mathbb{U} \) in Table 4.3 on page 80).

6.2.2 Language extensions

In this section, we discuss the necessary extensions of the Rumer language to support selective ownership. Selective ownership gives rise to a number of system invariants upon which the extended verification technique relies. We first introduce those system invariants and then sketch how to extend the Rumer type system introduced earlier.

System invariants

Selective ownership superimposes the notion of a “unique owner” on top of the Matryoshka Principle. By leveraging the guarantees made by the principle, selective ownership allows for a more localized expression of ownership, permitting a scheme in which
shared and owned instances coexist. Whether an instance is owned or shared is determined at instantiation time. If an instance has an owner, then this owner remains the same for the instance’s entire lifetime. We can capture this aspect of selective ownership by the following system invariant:

**System Invariant 6.1 (Selective ownership):** Consider a type whose instances can have an owner and an instance \( t \) of this type. Selective ownership allows \( t \) either to have an owner or not to have an owner at all. If \( t \) has an owner, this owner is unique, determined at \( t \)’s instantiation time, and remains unchanged for \( t \)’s entire lifetime.

To allow selective ownership to benefit from the guarantees made by the Matryoshka Principle and from the absence of transitive call-backs, in particular, the ownership relation must be a subset of a program’s participants relation. This requirement gives rise to the following system invariant:

**System Invariant 6.2 (Ownership relation is subset of participants relation):** Consider an instance \( t \). The instance \( t \) can have an instance \( u \) as its owner if and only if \( t \) is not a mold instance, \( u \) is neither a mold instance nor a role element instance, and \( \text{BaseType}(t) \) is a direct participant of \( \text{BaseType}(u) \).

System Invariant 6.2 also indicates that owned instances can be entity instances as well as relationship instances and that owners can be relationship instances as well as the application singleton instance. A programmer can selectively impose ownership on an instance by using selective ownership modifiers. These modifiers indicate ownership of an instance relative to the current receiver instance. We distinguish the following selective ownership modifiers:

- **owned**: referred-to instance has the current receiver instance as its owner;
- **shared** (default modifier): referred-to instance does not have an owner;
- **readonly**: referred-to instance may or may not have an owner.

Selective ownership modifiers can appear as part of element type declarations and extent type declarations, permitting ownership to be imposed on element instances (including role element instances in the case of a relationship element instance) and extent instances. Owners, on the other hand, can be relationship element instances (excluding role element instances), relationship extent instances, and the application singleton instance. Ownership for role element instances is not supported since role element instances cannot declare any invariants. If a type declaration omits the selective ownership modifier, then the default modifier shared is assumed.

The following system invariant guarantees that element ownership is always combined with extent ownership and consequently prevents shared extent instances from modifying the locations of owned element instances that reside in those extent instances.

**System Invariant 6.3 (Element ownership implies extent ownership):** Consider an instance \( o \) that has an owner. If \( o \) is an entity element instance or a relationship element
6.2 Selective Ownership

instance, then the extent instance in which \( o \) resides is owned too and has the same owner as \( o \).

Since role element instances are implicitly instantiated along with relationship element instantiation (see Section 3.4.1 on page 65), System Invariant 6.3 also entails the following system invariant:

**System Invariant 6.4 (Role element ownership iff relationship element ownership):** Consider an instance \( o \) that has an owner. If \( o \) is a relationship element instance, then the role element instances related by \( o \) are owned too and have the same owner as \( o \). If \( o \) is a role element instance, then the relationship element instances that relate \( o \) are owned too and have the same owner as \( o \).

Selective ownership modifiers constrain routine invocations and thus override the restrictions imposed on routine invocations by the Matryoshka Principle (i.e., parameter \( \mathbb{C} \), see Table 4.5 on page 85\(^1\)). In particular, selective ownership only allows owners to invoke routines on owned instances. This regime guarantees that modifications of an owned instance’s fields are initiated by the instance’s owner and gives rise to a discipline which is referred to in the context of Universe Type systems as the “owner-as-modifier discipline” [96]. In Section 6.2.3, we revisit this property and introduce the idiom “owned-called-by-owner” to contrast the discipline arising from selective ownership with the “owner-as-modifier” discipline. Routine invocations on shared instances, on the other hand, are not constrained by selective ownership. Furthermore, selective ownership permits the reading of fields and query members of owned instances and the application of built-in query operators to owned instances. This aspect of selective ownership can be captured by the following system invariant:

**System Invariant 6.5 (Effects of selective ownership modifiers):** Consider a current receiver instance \( o \) that keeps a reference to an instance \( o' \). If the selective ownership modifier of the reference is shared, then \( o \) can only invoke a routine on \( o' \) if \( o' \) is an admissible callee according to parameter \( \mathbb{C} \). If the selective ownership modifier of the reference is owned, then \( o \) can only invoke a routine on \( o' \) if \( o' \) is an admissible callee according to parameter \( \mathbb{C} \) and if \( o \) is the owner of \( o' \). If the selective ownership modifier of the reference is readonly, then \( o \) cannot invoke any routines on \( o' \).

**Type system**

We next sketch how we extend the Rumer type system introduced in Section 3.3 on page 59 to incorporate selective ownership. We only discuss the most important aspects of this extension since a complete and formal description thereof is beyond the scope of this thesis. Figure 6.2 shows the resulting extension of Rumer type system introduced in Figure 3.12 on page 60 that accommodates selective ownership modifiers. As detailed by

\(^1\)In Section 6.2.3, Table 6.7, we provide an updated account of parameter \( \mathbb{C} \) which takes precautions against accidental leaking of “supposedly shared” instances.
Figure 6.2: Rumer internal types extended with selective ownership modifiers (new constructs in comparison to Figure 3.12 are highlighted in **bold**). The shared modifier is the default modifier.

Figure 6.2, the selective ownership modifiers of the type system basically correspond to the selective ownership modifiers that can appear in the source text. To keep track of the respective kind of owner of an owned instance, however, the owned modifier additionally uses a subscript. An owner that is an element instance is denoted by the subscript Elm and an owner that is an extent instance is denoted by the subscript Ext. The internal type system thus distinguishes the following selective ownership modifiers: owned\textsubscript{Elm}, owned\textsubscript{Ext}, shared, and readonly.

To incorporate selective ownership into the subtyping relation introduced in Figure 3.13 on page 64, we define an ordering relation on the selective ownership modifiers. Figure 6.3 shows the resulting ordering relation. The relation indicates that the ordering on selective ownership modifiers is reflexive (ORD-REFLX) and that both the owned and shared modifiers are smaller (i.e., more precise) than the readonly modifier (ORD-OWNED-READONLY and ORD-SHARED-READONLY, resp.), leaving the readonly modifier as the least specific selective ownership modifier. Figure 6.4 details the selective-ownership-aware subtyping relation for Rumer types. As indicated by rule SUBSELOWNR-GEN, the selective-ownership-aware subtyping relation is generally determined by the subtyping relation defined in Figure 3.13 on page 64 and by the ordering relation on the selective ownership modifiers defined in Figure 6.3. For example, the rule SUBROLE1 in Figure 3.13 and the rule SUBSELOWNR-GEN in Figure 6.4 indicate for a relationship R with the owned participant base type A a that the owned role Element\langle R.a\rangle conforms to the owned participant supertype Element\langle A\rangle. However, for role types and extent types the rules SUBSELOWNR-ROLE and SUBSELOWNR-EXTENT additionally apply. For example, if a Composite relationship element instance declared inclusive ownership of its Composite element instance’s tree Parent extent instance (see Figure 6.1), then the rule SUBSELOWNR-ROLE would guarantee that the owned roles Element\langle Parent.child\rangle and Element\langle Parent.parent\rangle conform to the shared participant
6.2 SELECTIVE OWNERSHIP

\[ m \leq m \]  
\[ \text{owned}_{\text{owner}} \leq \text{readonly} \]  
\[ \text{shared} \leq \text{readonly} \]

Figure 6.3: Ordering relation on selective ownership modifiers. The meta-variables m and owner range over the modifier names and owner names, resp., defined in Figure 6.2.

\[ m \leq n \quad S <: T \]  
\[ m \quad \text{owned}_{\text{owner}} \quad \text{Element}(R) \quad \text{shared} \quad T \quad \text{Element}(R) <: T \]  
\[ m \quad \text{Extent}(n S) \quad \text{selOwnr} <: \quad \text{shared} \quad T \quad \text{Set}(n S) \]

Figure 6.4: Selective-ownership-aware subtyping relation. The meta-variables m and n as well as owner range over the modifier names and owner names, resp., defined in Figure 6.2. The meta-variable R ranges over relationship names, and the meta-variable S and T range over types. See Figure 6.3 for relation “\( \leq \)” and Figure 3.13 on page 64 for relation “\(<:\)”.

\[ m_1 \bowtie m_2 \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>owned(_{\text{owner}})</th>
<th>shared</th>
<th>readonly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( m_1 )</td>
<td>readonly</td>
<td>shared</td>
<td>readonly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( m_2 )</td>
<td>readonly</td>
<td>shared</td>
<td>readonly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{owned}_{\text{owner}} )</td>
<td>readonly</td>
<td>shared</td>
<td>readonly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{shared} )</td>
<td>readonly</td>
<td>shared</td>
<td>readonly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{readonly} )</td>
<td>readonly</td>
<td>shared</td>
<td>readonly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.5: Viewpoint adaptation for selective ownership modifiers.

Since selective ownership modifiers are stated relative to a current receiver instance, the resulting modifier of a reference chain is determined by the modifiers of the individual references. Similarly to the Universe Type system, we define a viewpoint adaptation operation\[99\] that indicates the resulting selective ownership modifier for a compound access of two instances. Table 6.5 shows the resulting viewpoint adaptation for the selective ownership modifiers introduced in this section. It indicates, for example, that the chained access of a shared reference through an owned reference remains shared.

6.2.3 Semantics

In this section, we describe what the effects of selective ownership are on program executions. We first discuss necessary precautions to prevent accidental leaking of “supposedly shared” instances and then capture the “owned-called-by-owner” discipline.
Precautions

Selective ownership requires type declarations to be formulated so as to allow possible callers to obtain either owned or shared instances of the type. As a result, only the caller-site knows about the ownership of an instance and can thus guard the instance against prohibited modifications or against accidental leaking by establishing appropriate selective ownership modifiers. The callee-site, on the other hand, does not know whether a particular instance is owned or shared and thus may perceive an owned instance as “supposedly shared”. To guarantee soundness of our hybrid ownership system, we take precautions to prevent the accidental leaking of such “supposedly shared” instances. Before discussing the necessary precautions, we introduce the notion of an inaccurate reference to denote a reference that points to a “supposedly shared” instance:

Definition 6.6 (Inaccurate reference): Consider a reference to an instance \( o \) with the selective ownership modifier \( m \). The reference is inaccurate, if \( o \) has an owner, but the modifier \( m \) is shared. Otherwise, the reference is accurate.

Similarly, we define the notions of an inaccurate field and inaccurate query:

Definition 6.7 (Inaccurate field): Consider an instance’s field with the selective ownership modifier \( m \) that stores a reference to an instance \( o \). The field is inaccurate, if \( o \) has an owner, but the field’s modifier \( m \) is shared. Otherwise, the field is accurate.

Definition 6.8 (Inaccurate query): Consider an instance’s query with the selective ownership modifier \( m \) that returns a reference to an instance \( o \). The query is inaccurate, if \( o \) has an owner, but the query’s modifier \( m \) is shared. Otherwise, the query is accurate.

Given the definition of an inaccurate reference, we can restate our goal more precisely as: to prevent an instance from leaking an inaccurate reference to an instance \( o \) to an instance \( o' \) that can invoke routines on \( o \) according to System Invariant 6.5 and that is not the owner of \( o \). Due to the caller-site-controlled ownership scheme, an inaccurate reference to the owned instance \( o \) can only be generated from within any (possibly transitive) callee \( o'' \) of the owner of \( o \). The only way how such a callee \( o'' \) can leak any inaccurate reference to \( o \) is either by passing the reference on to a (possibly transitive) callee of itself or by storing the reference in an instance’s inaccurate field. Furthermore, if the callee \( o'' = o \), then \( o \) can leak an inaccurate reference to \( o \) to \( o' \) by declaring an inaccurate query that returns \( o \). According to the restrictions imposed on routine invocations by the Matryoshka Principle (i.e., parameter \( C \), see Table 4.5 on page 85) and by acyclicity of the participants relation (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), it is guaranteed that any (possibly transitive) callee of \( o'' \) is not allowed to invoke a routine on \( o \). Thus, in order to guarantee soundness of our hybrid ownership system, the only precautions left to be taken are: to prevent the callee \( o'' \) from storing a reference to \( o \) in an instance’s inaccurate field and to prevent the owned instance \( o \) from declaring an inaccurate query that returns \( o \).

To prevent any (possibly transitive) callee \( o'' \) of an owner of an instance \( o \) from storing a
reference to \( o \) in an instance’s inaccurate field, we impose restrictions on (i) the admissible types for field declarations and on (ii) the admissible receivers of mold constructor and mold initializer invocations. The first restriction (i) removes some of the liberalness discussed in Section 4.4 on page 86 and requires that field declarations do not “point to” instances of a base type of which the declaring base type is a direct or transitive participant. This restriction is listed in Table 6.6. Table 6.6 indicates for an instance of a particular type of which types the instance is not allowed to declare any fields. The second restriction (ii) removes some of the liberalness with regard to invocations of mold constructors and mold initializers and require those invocations to propagate — like any other routine invocations — in the direction of a program’s participants relation. Without the second restriction (ii), the callee \( o'' \) could invoke a routine on a mold instance of a base type of which \( \text{BaseType}(o) \) is direct or transitive participant and thus store an inaccurate reference to the owned instance \( o \) in the mold instance’s field. To realize the second restriction (ii), we update the existing restrictions on routine invocations imposed by the Matryoshka Principle (i.e., parameter \( C \), see Table 4.5 on page 85). Table 6.7 shows the new instantiation of parameter \( C \) on which our extended verification technique discussed in Section 6.3 relies. As compared to its previous instantiation shown in Table 4.5, the new instantiation of parameter \( C \) omits the rows that accept an arbitrary mold instance as

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instance</th>
<th>Illegal field type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Relationship R with participant base types A a and B b</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extent(Element(R)) rx</td>
<td>For any relationship T with participant base types C c and D d such that ( T \neq R ) and R is a direct or transitive participant of T: Extent(Element(T)), Element(T), Element(T.c), and Element(T.d).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element(R) r</td>
<td>Extent(Element(R)), Element(R), Element(R.a), and Element(R.b).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For any relationship T with participant base types C c and D d such that ( T \neq R ) and R is a direct or transitive participant of T: Extent(Element(T)), Element(T), Element(T.c), and Element(T.d).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mold(R) mr</td>
<td>Defined by Element(R).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element(R _) rab</td>
<td>Extent(Element(R)), Element(R), Element(R.a), and Element(R.b).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For any relationship T with participant base types C c and D d such that ( T \neq R ) and R is a direct or transitive participant of T: Extent(Element(T)), Element(T), Element(T.c), and Element(T.d).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Entity E</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extent(Element(E)) ex</td>
<td>For any relationship T with participant base types C c and D d such that E is a direct or transitive participant of T: Extent(Element(T)), Element(T), Element(T.c), and Element(T.d).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element(E) e</td>
<td>Extent(Element(E)) and Element(E).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For any relationship T with participant base types C c and D d such that E is a direct or transitive participant of T: Extent(Element(T)), Element(T), Element(T.c), and Element(T.d).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mold(E) me</td>
<td>Defined by Element(E).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.6: Types of which an instance cannot declare fields.
Executing routine  |  Allowed callee
---|---
Application App  |  Current receiver instance of type App.
  |  For any relationship or entity T, any instance o such that BaseType(o) = T.
Relationship R with participant base types A a and B b  |  Current receiver instance of type Extent<Element(R)>.
  |  Any instance of type Element(R), Mold(R), Element(R.a), Element(R.b), or any instance o such that BaseType(o) = A or BaseType(o) = B.
  |  Current receiver instance of type Extent<Element(R)>.
  |  Any instance of type Element(R), Mold(R), Element(R.a), Element(R.b), or any instance o such that BaseType(o) = A or BaseType(o) = B.
  |  Current receiver instance of type Extent<Element(R)>.
  |  Any instance of type Element(R), Mold(R), Element(R.a), Element(R.b), or any instance o such that BaseType(o) = A or BaseType(o) = B.
  |  Current receiver instance of type Extent<Element(R)>.
  |  Any instance of type Element(R), Mold(R), Element(R.a), Element(R.b), or any instance o such that BaseType(o) = A or BaseType(o) = B.
  |  Current receiver instance of type Extent<Element(R)>.
  |  Any instance of type Element(R), Mold(R), Element(R.a), Element(R.b), or any instance o such that BaseType(o) = A or BaseType(o) = B.
Entity E  |  Current receiver instance of type Extent<Element(R)>.
  |  Any instance of type Element(R) or Mold(E).
  |  Current receiver instance of type Extent<Element(R)>.
  |  Any instance of type Element(E) or Mold(E).
  |  Current receiver instance of type Extent<Element(E)>.
  |  Any instance of type Element(E) or Mold(E).
  |  Current receiver instance of type Element(E).
  |  Current receiver instance of type Element(E).
  |  Current receiver instance of type Element(E).
  |  Current receiver instance of type Element(E).

**Table 6.7:** Receivers on which executing routine is allowed to invoke routines (parameter C). This table extends Table 4.5 on page 85 with **selective ownership**, differences are highlighted in **bold**.

an admissible callee.

To prevent the owned instance o from declaring an inaccurate query that returns o, we restrict the admissible types for query declarations. The resulting restriction is listed in Table 6.8. Table 6.8 indicates for an instance of a particular type of which types the instance is not allowed to declare any queries. Except for extent instances, this restriction prevents an instance from declaring a query that redirects to the declaring instance.
### 6.2 Selective Ownership

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instance</th>
<th>Illegal query type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relationship $R$ with participant base types $A\ a$ and $B\ b$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Element}(R)\ r$</td>
<td>$\text{Extent}(\text{Element}(R))$, $\text{Element}(R)$, $\text{Element}(R.a)$, and $\text{Element}(R.b)$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Mold}(R)\ mr$</td>
<td>Defined by $\text{Element}(R)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Element}(R._\ )\ rab$</td>
<td>$\text{Extent}(\text{Element}(R))$, $\text{Element}(R)$, $\text{Element}(R.a)$, and $\text{Element}(R.b)$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity $E$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Element}(E)\ e$</td>
<td>$\text{Extent}(\text{Element}(E))$ and $\text{Element}(E)$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Mold}(E)\ me$</td>
<td>Defined by $\text{Element}(E)$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Table 6.8: Types of which an instance cannot declare queries. |

Given these precautions, we can state an important lemma that precisely proves for any well-formed Rumer call stack and for any routine execution on any callee of a possibly owned instance that the callee does not store any references to the owned instance in inaccurate fields. To state the lemma, we first need to provide an updated definition of the well-formedness condition on a call stack introduced in Definition 5.2 on page 104 to account for the new instantiation of parameter $C$ (see Table 6.7):

**Definition 6.9 (Restatement of “well-formed call stack”):** A call stack $\sigma$ is well-formed if and only if for any consecutive stack frames $(o', r')_l$ and $(o, r)_{l-1}$ contained in $\sigma$, where $(o', r')_l$ denotes the callee stack frame and $(o, r)_{l-1}$ denotes the caller stack frame, it either holds that $\text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o)$ or that $\text{BaseType}(o')$ is a direct participant of $\text{BaseType}(o)$, according to the participants relation of the program. In the latter case, it holds further that there exists no preceding stack frame $(o'', r'')_k$ such that $0 \leq k < l - 1$ and that $\text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o')$.

The following corollary is a restatement of Proposition 5.3 on page 104 and guarantees that the execution of a Rumer program only produces well-formed call-stacks:

**Corollary 6.10 (Restatement of “Rumer call stacks are well-formed”):** Any call stack $\sigma$ generated by the execution of a Rumer program that is successfully type checked and verified using the extended verification technique is well-formed.

**Proof 6.11:** Corollary 6.10 is a restatement of Proposition 5.3 on page 104 based on the new definition of a well-formed call stack (see Definition 6.9) and the new instantiation of parameter $C$ (see Table 6.7). The new instantiation of parameter $C$ restricts invocations of mold constructors and mold initializers to propagate — like any other routine invocations — in the direction of a program’s participants clause.

We are finally in the position to state the lemma. The lemma relies on the notion of a semi-visible state (see Definition 5.7 on page 105). To state the lemma more concisely, we introduce the notion of “being rooted in an extent instance”, which we define as:

**Definition 6.12 (Rooted in extent instance):** For an extent instance $ox$, the instances
rooted in the extent instance \(ox\) are:

- if \(o\) is a relationship extent instance: \(ox\), all relationship element instances that reside in \(ox\), and all role element instances that are related by relationship element instances residing in \(ox\);
- if \(o\) is an entity extent instance: \(ox\) and all entity element instances that reside in \(ox\).

**Lemma 6.13 (Prevention of storing (possibly transitive) callers in callee’s fields):**

For any well-formed call stack \(\sigma\) and for any stack frame \((o, r)\) contained in \(\sigma\), if \(o\) is not the application singleton instance, then, for all semi-visible states \(s_i\) of \(r\)'s execution:

1. for any (possibly transitive) caller \(o'\) of \(o\) such that \(o' \neq o\): \(r\) does not store any references to instances that are rooted in the same extent instance as \(o'\) in fields to which \(r\) can write between the semi-visible states \(s_0\) and \(s_i\);

2. for the current receiver instance \(o\):

   a. if \(o\) is an extent instance: \(r\) stores references to any instances that are rooted in \(o\) at most in fields of \(o\) (but in no other fields to which \(r\) can write) between the semi-visible states \(s_0\) and \(s_i\);
   
   b. otherwise: \(r\) does not store any references to instances that are rooted in the same extent instance as \(o\) in fields to which \(r\) can write between the semi-visible states \(s_0\) and \(s_i\).

**Proof 6.14:** We prove Lemma 6.13 by considering, for the execution of a routine and for the types whose instances must not be stored during the routine’s execution, whether the instances to whose fields the routine can write are at all allowed to declare fields of such types. The proof is determined by parameters \(U\) and \(C\) (see Table 4.3 on page 80 and Table 6.7, resp.) as well as by the restrictions on field declarations defined in Table 6.6. We proceed by strong induction on the number \(k\) of transitive routine invocations made during the execution of a routine \(r\) on a current receiver instance \(o\). Let \(k\) be an arbitrary natural number of transitive routine invocations. By induction, we can assume that the lemma holds for any natural number \(j\) of transitive routine invocations such that \(j < k\) and we must show that it also holds for \(k\) transitive routine invocations. We assume that the current receiver instance \(o\) is not the application singleton instance, giving rise to the following cases:

**Case 1 (Default relationship extent constructor):** For the execution of a default relationship extent constructor \(r\) on an instance \(o\), we show that Lemma 6.13 holds for \(k\) transitive routine invocations made during \(r\)'s execution. We consider a relationship \(R\) with the participant base types \(A\) and \(B\) and the role identifiers \(a\) and \(b\), respectively, and proceed by investigating the only two semi-visible states of \(r\)'s execution:

**Initial state:** Immediate since no fields can yet have been written to.

**Final state:** According to parameter \(U\) (see Table 4.3 on page 80), \(r\) can only write to the fields of the current receiver instance \(o\) between \(s_0\) and \(s_{final}\).
(1) We know that \( o \) is a relationship extent instance and that \( o' \neq o \), by assumption. According to parameter \( C \) (see Table 6.7), a (possibly transitive) caller \( o' \) must then be of a base type \( T \) of which \( R \) is a direct or transitive participant. In line with Lemma 6.13, we only consider callers that are extent instances, relationship element instances, or role element instances. Thus, \( T \) must be a relationship with the participant base types \( C.c \) and \( D.d \), let’s say. According to Table 6.6 and since the participants relation is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), the instances to whose fields \( r \) can write between \( s_0 \) and \( s_{\text{final}} \) (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types \( \text{Extent}(\text{Element}(T)) \), \( \text{Element}(T) \), \( \text{Element}(T.c) \), and \( \text{Element}(T.d) \). As a result, \( r \) is guaranteed not to store any references to instances that are rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \) in fields to which \( r \) can write between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{\text{final}} \).

(2) According to Table 6.6, the only instance of those instances to whose fields \( r \) can write between \( s_0 \) and \( s_{\text{final}} \) (see above) and that is allowed to declare any fields of the types \( \text{Extent}(\text{Element}(R)) \), \( \text{Element}(R) \), \( \text{Element}(R.a) \), and \( \text{Element}(R.b) \) is the current extent receiver instance \( o \). Since \( o \) is empty, \( r \) is guaranteed to store at most a reference to \( o \) in fields of \( o \) (but in no other fields) between \( s_0 \) and \( s_{\text{final}} \).

Case 2 (Default entity extent constructor): The proof is analogous to the proof of a default relationship extent constructor (see Case 1) since the two constructors have analogous instantiations for parameters \( U \) (see Table 4.3 on page 80) and \( C \) (see Table 6.7) as well as analogous restrictions on field declarations (see Table 6.6) for the writable instances determined by parameter \( U \).

Case 3 (Relationship extent constructor or method): We collate the proofs of relationship extent constructors and relationship extent methods since they share the same set of writable instances (parameter \( U \), see Table 4.3 on page 80), to which the same restrictions on field declarations (see Table 6.6) consequently apply, and since they share the same set of (possibly) transitive callers (parameter \( C \), see Table 6.7). For the execution of such a routine \( r \) on an instance \( o \), we show that Lemma 6.13 holds for \( k \) transitive routine invocations made during \( r \)’s execution. We consider a relationship \( R \) with the participant base types \( A \) and \( B \) and the role identifiers \( a \) and \( b \), respectively, and proceed by secondary weak induction on the index \( i \) of semi-visible states of \( r \)’s execution:

\( i = 0 \): Base case: immediate since no fields can yet have been written to.

\( i = n + 1 \): Let \( n \) be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) and (2) hold in \( s_n \) and we must show that they hold in \( s_{n+1} \). There are two cases to be considered:

\( n + 1 \) is odd: Control remains within \( r \) between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \). According to parameter \( U \) (see Table 4.3 on page 80), \( r \) can write to the fields of the following instances between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \): \( o \), any relationship element instance residing in \( o \), and any role element instance related by such relationship element instances.
(1) We know that $o$ is a relationship extent instance and that $o' \neq o$, by assumption. According to parameter $C$ (see Table 6.7), a (possibly transitive) caller $o'$ must then be of a base type $T$ of which $R$ is a direct or transitive participant. In line with Lemma 6.13, we only consider callers that are extent instances, relationship element instances, or role element instances. Thus, $T$ must be a relationship with the participant base types $C.c$ and $D.d$, let’s say. According to Table 6.6 and since the participants relation is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), the instances to whose fields $r$ can write between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types $\text{Extent}(\text{Element}(T))$, $\text{Element}(T)$, $\text{Element}(T.c)$, and $\text{Element}(T.d)$. As a result, $r$ is guaranteed not to store any references to instances that are rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$ in fields to which $r$ can write between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and, thus, by inner induction, between $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(2) According to Table 6.6, the only instance of those instances to whose fields $r$ can write between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ (see above) and that is allowed to declare any fields of the types $\text{Extent}(\text{Element}(R))$, $\text{Element}(R)$, $\text{Element}(R.a)$, and $\text{Element}(R.b)$ is the current extent receiver instance $o$. As a result, $r$ is guaranteed to store references to $o$ or to any element instances comprised in $o$ (including role element instances related by such element instances) at most in fields of $o$ (but in no other fields to which $r$ can write) between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and, thus, by inner induction, between $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(n + 1 is even): A direct routine invocation $r''$ on an instance $o''$ is made between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) and (2) hold in $s_n$ and we must show that they hold in $s_{n+1}$. Since there must be strictly fewer than $k$ routine invocations made during the execution of the routine $r''$, we know, by outer induction, that Lemma 6.13 holds for the execution of $r''$. Furthermore, by parameter $C$ (see Table 6.7) and by acyclicity of the participants relation (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), we know that the callee $o''$ cannot be the singleton application instance and, thus, that (1) and (2) hold for the execution of $r''$. We consider the following cases:

(o'' = o): Then, we know by parameters $U$ (see Table 4.3 on page 80) and $C$ (see Table 6.7) that $r$ and $r''$ can write to fields of the same set of instances and that $o$ and $o''$ share the same set of (possibly) transitive callers, respectively, as well as that $o$ and $o''$ share the same set of “self-references”. As a result, (1) and (2) are also guaranteed to hold for $r$ between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and, thus, by inner induction, between $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(o'' ≠ o ∧ BaseType(o'') = BaseType(o) ∧ o'' is not mold instance): Then, we know by parameters $C$ and $U$ (see Table 6.7 and Table 4.3 on page 80, resp.) that $r''$ can write to the fields of a subset of those instances to whose fields $r$ can write. However, we know that the set of (possibly) transitive callers of $o$ is a subset of the set of (possibly) transitive callers of $o''$. As a result, (1) is also guaranteed to hold for $r$ between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and, thus, by inner induction,
between \(s_0\) and \(s_{n+1}\). Furthermore, we know that \(o\) is a caller of \(o''\), and that (1) holds for the execution of \(r''\). As a result, (2) is also guaranteed to hold for \(r\) between \(s_n\) and \(s_{n+1}\) and, thus, by inner induction, between \(s_0\) and \(s_{n+1}\).

**(otherwise):** Then, we know by parameters \(C\) and \(U\) (see Table 6.7 and Table 4.3 on page 80, resp.) as well as by acyclicity of the participants relation (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77) that \(r''\) cannot write to the fields of any of those instances to whose fields \(r\) can write. As a result, (1) and (2) are also guaranteed to hold for \(r\) between \(s_n\) and \(s_{n+1}\) and, thus, by inner induction, between \(s_0\) and \(s_{n+1}\).

**Case 4 (Entity extent constructor or method):** The proof is analogous to the proof of a relationship extent constructor or relationship extent method (see Case 3) since entity extent constructors or methods and relationship extent constructors or methods have analogous instantiations for parameters \(U\) (see Table 4.3 on page 80) and \(C\) (see Table 6.7) as well as analogous restrictions on field declarations (see Table 6.6) for the writable instances determined by parameter \(U\).

**Case 5 (Non-interposed relationship mold constructor or initializer):** We collate the proofs of non-interposed relationship mold constructors and non-interposed relationship mold initializers since they share the same set of writable instances (parameter \(U\), see Table 4.3 on page 80), to which the same restrictions on field declarations (see Table 6.6) consequently apply, and since they share the same set of (possibly) transitive callers (parameter \(C\), see Table 6.7). For the execution of such a routine \(r\) on an instance \(o\), we show that Lemma 6.13 holds for \(k\) transitive routine invocations made during \(r\)’s execution. We consider a relationship \(R\) with the participant base types \(A\) and \(B\) and the role identifiers \(a\) and \(b\), respectively, and proceed by investigating the only two semi-visible states of \(r\)’s execution:

**(Initial state):** Immediate since no fields can yet have been written to.

**(Final state):** According to parameter \(U\) (see Table 4.3 on page 80), \(r\) can write to the fields of the following instances between \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\): \(o\), \(o.a\) and \(o.b\).

1. We know that \(o\) is a relationship mold instance and that \(o' \neq o\), by assumption (and since mold constructors and initializers cannot invoke other routines). According to parameter \(C\) (see Table 6.7), a (possibly transitive) caller \(o'\) must then be any of the below mentioned instances. In line with Lemma 6.13, we only consider callers that are extent instances, relationship element instances, or role element instances and ignore the singleton instance of the application App:

**\((o' = \text{instance of type Extent } \langle \text{Element } \langle R \rangle \rangle)\):** According to Table 6.6, the instances to whose fields \(r\) can write between \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\) (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent\(\langle \text{Element } \langle R \rangle \rangle\), Element\(\langle R \rangle\), Element\(\langle R.a \rangle\), and Element\(\langle R.b \rangle\). As a result, \(r\) is guaranteed not to store any references to \(o'\) nor references to any element instances comprised in \(o'\) (including role element instances related by such element instances) in fields to which \(r\) can write between \(s_0\) and \(s_{\text{final}}\).
( BaseType( o' ) = T \land R \text{ is direct or transitive participant of } T \land T \neq \text{App})$: T must be a relationship with the participant base types C c and D d, let’s say. According to Table 6.6 and since the participants relation is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), the instances to whose fields r can write between s₀ and s_{final} (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent( Element( T ) ), Element( T ), Element( T . c ), and Element( T . d ). As a result, r is guaranteed not to store any references to instances that are rooted in the same extent instance as o₁' in fields to which r can write between the semi-visible states s₀ and s_{final}.

(2) Vacuous since o is a relationship mold instance.

Case 6 (Entity mold constructor or initializer): The proof is analogous to the proof of a non-interposed relationship mold constructor or non-interposed relationship mold initializer (see Case 5) since entity mold constructors or initializers and relationship mold constructors or initializers have analogous instantiations for parameters U (see Table 4.3 on page 80) and C (see Table 6.7) as well as analogous restrictions on field declarations (see Table 6.6) for the writable instances determined by parameter U.

Case 7 (Non-interposed relationship element method): For the execution of a non-interposed relationship element method r on an instance o, we show that Lemma 6.13 holds for k transitive routine invocations made during r’s execution. The proof is in parts analogous to the proof of Case 3. Therefore, we only prove the parts that are specific to the execution of a non-interposed relationship element method and refer to the proof of Case 3 otherwise. We consider a relationship R with the participant base types A and B and the role identifiers a and b, respectively, and proceed by secondary weak induction on the index i of semi-visible states of r’s execution:

(i = 0): Base case: immediate since no fields can yet have been written to.

(i = n + 1): Let n be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) and (2) hold in sₙ and we must show that they hold in s_{n+1}. There are two cases to be considered:

(n + 1 is odd): Control remains within r between sₙ and s_{n+1}. According to parameter U (see Table 4.3 on page 80), r can write to the fields of the following instances between sₙ and s_{n+1}: o, o.a, and o.b.

(1) We know that o is a relationship element instance and that o' \neq o, by assumption. According to parameter C (see Table 6.7), a (possibly transitive) caller o' must then be any of the below mentioned instances. In line with Lemma 6.13, we only consider callers that are extent instances, relationship element instances, or role element instances and ignore the singleton instance of the application App:

(o' = \text{instance of type Extent( Element( R ) )}): According to Table 6.6, the instances to whose fields r can write between sₙ and s_{n+1} (see above) are not
allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent<Element<R>>, Element<R>, Element<R.a>, and Element<R.b>. As a result, r is guaranteed not to store any references to o’ nor references to any element instances comprised in o’ (including role element instances related by such element instances) in fields to which r can write between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and, thus, by inner induction, between $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(BaseType(o')) = T $\land$ R is direct or transitive participant of T $\land$ T $\neq$ App)

T must be a relationship with the participant base types C and D, let’s say. According to Table 6.6 and since the participants relation is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), the instances to whose fields r can write between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent<Element⟨T⟩>, Element⟨T⟩, Element⟨T.c⟩, and Element⟨T.d⟩. As a result, r is guaranteed not to store any references to instances that are rooted in the same extent instance as o in fields to which r can write between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and, thus, by inner induction, between $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(2) According to Table 6.6, the instances to whose fields r can write between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent<Element⟨R⟩>, Element⟨R⟩, Element⟨R.a⟩, and Element⟨R.b⟩. As a result, r is guaranteed not to store references to the extent instance ox in which o resides nor references to any element instances comprised in ox (including role element instances related by such element instances) in fields to which r can write between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and, thus, by inner induction, between $s_0$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(n+1 is even): A direct routine invocation $r''$ on an instance o'' is made between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$. Since the callee o'' cannot be the singleton application instance, this proof is analogous to the proof of Case 3.

Case 8 (Entity element method): The proof is analogous to the proof of a non-interposed relationship element method (see Case 7) since entity element methods and relationship element methods have analogous instantiations for parameters $U$ (see Table 6.4 on page 80) and $C$ (see Table 6.7) as well as analogous restrictions on field declarations (see Table 6.6) for the writable instances determined by parameter $U$.

Case 9 (Interposed relationship element method): For the execution of an interposed relationship element method r on an instance o, we show that Lemma 6.13 holds for k transitive routine invocations made during r’s execution. The proof is in parts analogous to the proof of Case 3. Therefore, we only prove the parts that are specific to the execution of an interposed relationship element method and refer to the proof of Case 3 otherwise. We consider a relationship R with the participant base types A and B and the role identifiers a and b, respectively, and proceed by secondary weak induction on the index i of semi-visible states of r’s execution:

(i = 0): Base case: immediate since no fields can yet have been written to.
(i = n + 1): Let n be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) and (2) hold in sₙ and we must show that they hold in sₙ₊₁. There are two cases to be considered:

(n + 1 is odd): Control remains within r between sₙ and sₙ₊₁. According to parameter Û (see Table 4.3 on page 80), r can only write to the fields of o between sₙ and sₙ₊₁.

(1) We know that o is a role element instance and that o′ ≠ o, by assumption. According to parameter C (see Table 6.7), a (possibly transitive) caller o′ must then be any of the below mentioned instances. In line with Lemma 6.13, we only consider callers that are extent instances, relationship element instances, or role element instances and ignore the singleton instance of the application App:

(o′ = instance of type Extent(Element(R))): According to Table 6.6, the instances to whose fields r can write between sₙ and sₙ₊₁ (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent(Element(R)), Element(R), Element(R.a), and Element(R.b). As a result, r is guaranteed not to store any references to o′ nor references to any element instances comprised in o′ (including role element instances related by such element instances) in fields to which r can write between sₙ and sₙ₊₁ and, thus, by inner induction, between s₀ and sₙ₊₁.

(o′ = instance of type Element(R)): According to Table 6.6, the instances to whose fields r can write between sₙ and sₙ₊₁ (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent(Element(R)), Element(R), Element(R.a), and Element(R.b). As a result, r is guaranteed not to store any references to the extent instance ox′ in which o′ resides nor references to any element instances comprised in ox′ (including role element instances related by such element instances) in fields to which r can write between sₙ and sₙ₊₁ and, thus, by inner induction, between s₀ and sₙ₊₁.

(BaseType(o′) = T ∧ R is direct or transitive participant of T ∧ T ≠ App): T must be a relationship with the participant base types C c and D d, let’s say. According to Table 6.6 and since the participants relation is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), the instances to whose fields r can write between sₙ and sₙ₊₁ (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent(Element(T)), Element(T), Element(T.c), and Element(T.d). As a result, r is guaranteed not to store any references to instances that are rooted in the same extent instance as o′ in fields to which r can write between sₙ and sₙ₊₁ and, thus, by inner induction, between s₀ and sₙ₊₁.

(2) According to Table 6.6, the instances to whose fields r can write between sₙ and sₙ₊₁ (see above) are not allowed to declare any fields of the types Extent(Element(R)), Element(R), Element(R.a), and Element(R.b). As a result, r is guaranteed not to store references to the extent instance ox in which
the relationship element instances that relate \( o \) reside nor references to any element instances comprised in \( ox \) (including role element instances related by such element instances) in fields to which \( r \) can write between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \) and, thus, by inner induction, between \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

\((n + 1 \text{ is even})\): A direct routine invocation \( r'' \) on an instance \( o'' \) is made between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \). Since the callee \( o'' \) cannot be the singleton application instance, this proof is analogous to the proof of Case 3.

\[\square\]

**Owned-called-by-owner**

In this section, we introduce Lemma 6.22 that captures the effects of selective ownership on a program’s call stack. Lemma 6.22 is stated from the perspective of an owned instance and guarantees that any owned instance residing on the call stack is preceded by its owner. As a result, Lemma 6.22 guarantees that any modifications of an owned instance’s field are initiated by the instance’s owner. However, since our ownership system is hybrid, this property does not hold for all the instances in a program’s heap, but only for those instances in a program’s heap that are owned. To contrast the discipline emerging from selective ownership with the “owner-as-modifier” discipline of the Universe Type system [96], we refer to our discipline as the “owned-called-by-owner” discipline.

In the proof of Lemma 6.22, we rely on Proposition 6.16, Proposition 6.18, and Proposition 6.20. Proposition 6.16 provides an upper bound on the regions in a program’s heap to which inaccurate references can possibly be leaked. Proposition 6.16 relies on the notion of “being rooted in an extent instance” introduced in Definition 6.12 as well as on the notion of an implicit reference, which we define as:

**Definition 6.15 (Implicit reference):** For an element instance or extent instance \( o \), its implicit references are:

- if \( o \) is an extent instance: \( o \) and the implicit references of any element instances residing in \( o \);
- if \( o \) is a relationship element instance of a relationship \( R \) with the participant base types \( A a \) and \( B b \): \( o, o.a, \) and \( o.b \);
- if \( o \) is an entity element instance: \( o \).

**Proposition 6.16 (Escape of owned instance):** For any well-formed call stack \( \sigma \), for any owned instance \( o' \), and for any stack frame \((o'', r'')\) contained in \( \sigma \) such that \( o'' \) is rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \), if \( o' \) escapes \( r'' \) to an instance \( o \), then \( o \) is either the owner of \( o' \) or it holds that \( \text{BaseType}(o) = \text{BaseType}(o') \) or that \( \text{BaseType}(o) \) is a direct or transitive participant of \( \text{BaseType}(o') \). In the former case it holds that the reference to the escaped instance \( o' \) kept by \( o \) is accurate. In the latter case it holds that the reference to the escaped instance \( o' \) kept by \( o \) is inaccurate (unless the modifier is readonly) and that the instance \( o \) only stores a reference to \( o' \) in a field \( f \) or redirects a query \( q \) to \( o' \) if \( o \)
is the extent instance in which $o'$ is rooted and the field $f$ and the query $q$ are members of $o$. Any such field $f$ and query $q$ is inaccurate (unless the modifier is readonly).

**Proof 6.17:** We consider a current receiver instance $o''$ that is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$ because such an instance may have an implicit reference (see Definition 6.15) to $o'$. Since $o''$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$, it holds that $BaseType(o'') = BaseType(o')$. A temporary reference to $o'$ can escape the routine $r''$ if $r''$ returns such a reference to its caller. By the well-formedness of a call stack (see Corollary 6.10 and Definition 6.9), by parameter $\mathbb{C}$ (see Table 6.7), and by System Invariant 6.2 and since $BaseType(o'') = BaseType(o')$, we know that the caller of $o''$ is either of $BaseType(o')$ or of the same base type as the owner of $o'$. In the latter case, we know, by System Invariant 6.5 and since the caller-site of an owned instance uses selective ownership modifiers to control access to the owned instance, that the caller of $o''$ must be the owner of $o'$, which keeps an accurate reference to $o'$. Furthermore, a temporary reference to $o'$ can escape the routine $r''$ if $r''$ passes such a reference on to its (possibly transitive) callees. By the well-formedness of a call stack (see Corollary 6.10 and Definition 6.9) and by parameter $\mathbb{C}$ (see Table 6.7) and since $BaseType(o'') = BaseType(o')$, we know that any (possibly transitive) callee of $o''$ is of $BaseType(o')$ or of a base type that is a direct or transitive participant of $BaseType(o')$. For any instance $p$ that obtains an escaped, temporary reference to $o'$ and that is of $BaseType(o')$ or of a base type that is a direct or transitive participant of $BaseType(o')$, we know that its reference to $o'$ is inaccurate (unless the modifier is readonly) since $p$ resides at the callee-site of the owner of $o'$. For such an instance $p$, we know further, by Lemma 6.13, that $p$ only stores a reference to $o'$ in a field $f$ if $p$ is the extent instance in which $o'$ is rooted and if $f$ is a field of that extent instance. The field $f$ is inaccurate as well, unless the field’s modifier is readonly. Furthermore, by Table 6.8, we know, for such an instance $p$, that $p$ can only declare a query $q$ that redirects to $o'$ if $p$ is the extent instance in which $o'$ is rooted and if $q$ is a query of that extent instance. The query $q$ is inaccurate as well, unless the query’s modifier is readonly.

Selective ownership may permit routine invocations on owned instances through inaccurate references. Proposition 6.18 delimits those cases for extent instances and states, for the execution of a method on an extent instance, under which circumstances the method may get hold of an inaccurate reference to an instance that is of the same base type as the extent instance.

**Proposition 6.18 (Possibly inaccurate references for extent instance):** For any well-formed call stack $\sigma$ and for any stack frame $(o, r)$ contained in $\sigma$ such that $o$ is an extent instance, if $r$ keeps a reference to an owned instance $o'$ such that $BaseType(o') = BaseType(o)$, then the reference can only be inaccurate if $o'$ is rooted in $o$.

**Proof 6.19:** By assumption, we know that $BaseType(o) = BaseType(o')$ and that the reference to $o'$ is inaccurate. By Proposition 6.16 we know that an inaccurate reference to $o'$ can at most be stored in a field or redirected to a query of the extent instance in which $o'$ is
rooted. According to System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4, this extent instance must have the same owner as $o'$. Thus, in order for $r$ to get hold of an inaccurate reference to $o'$ or of an inaccurate reference to the extent instance in which $o'$ is rooted, such a reference must escape from a (possibly transitive) caller of $o$. According to Proposition 6.16, the reference must escape from a routine execution on an instance $o''$ such that $o''$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$. Since $o''$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$, it follows that $\text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o')$, and since $\text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o)$, that $\text{BaseType}(o'') = \text{BaseType}(o)$. Since $o$ is an extent instance, it follows from parameter $C$ (see Table 6.7) that $o''$ can only be a caller of $o$ if $o'' = o$ and, thus, that $o'$ is rooted in $o$.

Similarly, Proposition 6.20 states, for the execution of a relationship element method, how the method may get hold of an inaccurate reference to a role element instance.

**Proposition 6.20 (Possibly inaccurate references for relationship element instance):** For any well-formed call stack $\sigma$ and for any stack frame $(o, r)_l$ contained in $\sigma$ such that $o$ is a relationship element instance, if $r$ keeps a reference to an owned instance $o'$ such that $o'$ is a role element instance and $\text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o)$, then the reference can only be inaccurate if $o$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$ or if $o$ is not rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$, but there exists a stack frame $(o'', r'')_k$ such that $k < l$ and such that $o''$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$.

**Proof 6.21:** By assumption, we know that $\text{BaseType}(o) = \text{BaseType}(o')$ and that the reference to $o'$ is inaccurate. By Proposition 6.16 we know that an inaccurate reference to $o'$ can at most be stored in a field or redirected to a query of the extent instance in which $o'$ is rooted. According to System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4, this extent instance must have the same owner as $o'$. Thus, in order for $r$ to get hold of an inaccurate reference to $o'$ or of an inaccurate reference to the extent instance in which $o'$ is rooted, such a reference must escape from a (possibly transitive) caller of $o$. According to Proposition 6.16, the reference must escape from a routine execution on an instance $p$ such that $p$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$. Since $p$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$, it follows that $\text{BaseType}(p) = \text{BaseType}(o')$, and since $\text{BaseType}(o') = \text{BaseType}(o)$, that $\text{BaseType}(p) = \text{BaseType}(o)$. According to parameter $C$ (see Table 6.7), $p$ can be any of the following instances:

**(p = o):** Since $p$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$, it follows that $o$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$.

**(p = extent instance in which o is rooted):** Since $p$ is the extent instance in which $o'$ is rooted, it follows that $o$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$.

**(p = extent instance of BaseType(o) ∧ o not rooted in p):** Since $p$ is the extent instance in which $o'$ is rooted and since $o$ is not rooted in $p$, it follows that $o$ is not rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$, but it holds for $o'' = p$ that $o''$ is rooted in the same extent instance as $o'$.
We can finally state Lemma 6.22, which captures the “owned-called-by-owner” discipline that selective ownership establishes:

Lemma 6.22 (Call stack and ownership): For any well-formed call stack \(\sigma\) and for any stack frame \((o', r')_n\) contained in \(\sigma\), if the instance \(o'\) is owned, then there exists an index \(k\) (where \(k < n\)) and a stack frame \((o, r)_k\) such that:

1. \(o'\) is owned by \(o\);
2. for all stack frame \((p', s')_m\) (where \(k < m < n\)):
   - (a) if \(o'\) is an extent instance, then \(p'\) is also owned by \(o\);
   - (b) if \(o'\) is an element instance, then it holds that:
     - \(p'\) is also owned by \(o\), or,
     - \(p'\) is not owned by \(o\), but there exists an index \(l\) and stack frame \((p, s)_l\), such that \(k < l < m\) and \(p \neq p'\), where \(p\) is owned by \(o\).

Proof 6.23: We assume that \(o'\) is owned and choose \(k\) such that, for the stack frames \((o, r)_k\) and \((q, t)_{k+1}\), it holds that \(BaseType(o')\) is a direct participant of \(BaseType(o)\) and that \(BaseType(q) = BaseType(o')\):

1. By assumption, we know that \(o'\) is owned. According to System Invariant 6.2, the base type of the owner of \(o'\) is a base type of which \(BaseType(o')\) is a direct participant. Since we chose \(k\) and the stack frames \((o, r)_k\) and \((q, t)_{k+1}\) such that \(BaseType(o')\) is a direct participant of \(BaseType(o)\) and such that \(BaseType(q) = BaseType(o')\), it follows that the owner of \(o'\) is an instance of \(BaseType(o)\). We show first \((i)\) that \(q\) must be an instance that is rooted in the same extent instance as \(o'\) and then show \((ii)\) that, in this case, \(o\) is also the owner of \(o'\):
   - \((i)\) We show that \(q\) must be an instance that is rooted in the same extent instance as \(o'\) by assuming that \(q\) is not rooted in the same extent instance as \(o'\) and by reaching a contradiction. If \(q\) is rooted in a different extent instance than \(o'\), then, it follows from System Invariant 3.6 on page 71 that \(q \neq o'\). According to parameter \(C\) (see Table 6.7) and since \(BaseType(q) = BaseType(o')\), \(q\) can be any of the following instances:
     - \((q = \text{extent instance})\): Then the callee \(o'\) can be any of the following instances:
       - \((o' = \text{relationship or entity element instance})\): Then, in order for \(q\) to invoke a routine on \(o'\) the routine executing on \(q\) needs to keep an inaccurate reference to \(o'\). Since \(BaseType(q) = BaseType(o')\), it follows from Proposition 6.18 that \(o'\) is rooted in \(q\), which leads to a contradiction.
       - \((o' = \text{role element instance})\): Then, \(o'\) is either invoked by \(q\) or \(o'\) is invoked by a relationship element instance \(x\) such that \(BaseType(x) = BaseType(o')\) and such that \(x\) is a (possibly transitive) callee of \(q\). In the former case, we reach a contradiction through Proposition 6.18 as shown in Case \((o'\) is relationship or entity element instance). In the latter case, the routine executing on \(x\) needs to keep an inaccurate reference to \(o'\) in order for \(x\) to invoke a routine on \(o'\). Then, since \(BaseType(x) = BaseType(o')\), it follows from Proposition 6.20...
that either (i) \( x \) is rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \) or that (ii) \( x \) is not rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \), but (possibly transitively) invoked by an instance \( y \) which is rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \). In case (i), we know by System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4 that \( x \) is owned as well, leading to a contradiction through Proposition 6.18 as shown in Case (\( o' \) is relationship or entity element instance). In case (ii), it follows from System Invariant 3.6 on page 71 that \( y \neq x \) since the instance \( x \) is not rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \). According to parameter \( C \) (see Table 6.7), \( y \) must be the relationship extent instance \( q \). However, this leads to a contradiction since \( y \) is rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \).

\( q = \text{relationship element instance} \): In order for \( q \) to invoke a routine on \( o' \), the routine executing on \( q \) needs to keep an inaccurate reference to \( o' \). Then, since \( \text{BaseType}(q) = \text{BaseType}(o') \), it follows from Proposition 6.20 that either (i) \( q \) is rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \) or that (ii) \( q \) is not rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \), but (possibly transitively) invoked by an instance \( y \) which is rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \). In case (i), we know by System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4 that \( q \) is owned as well, leading to a contradiction through Proposition 6.18 as shown in Case (\( o' \) is relationship or entity element instance). In case (ii), it follows from System Invariant 3.6 on page 71 that \( y \neq q \) since the instance \( q \) is not rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \). According to parameter \( C \) (see Table 6.7), \( y \) must be a relationship extent instance such that \( \text{BaseType}(q) = \text{BaseType}(o') \). However, this leads to a contradiction since \( q \) is the most recent instance on the call stack of \( \text{BaseType}(o') \).

(ii) If \( q \) is an instance that is rooted in the same extent instance as \( o' \), then, it follows from System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4 that \( q \) has the same owner as \( o' \). Since the caller-site of an owned instance uses selective ownership modifiers to control access to the owned instance, it follows from System Invariant 6.5 that the caller \( o \) of \( q \) is the owner of \( q \) and, thus, that \( o \) is also the owner of \( o' \).

(2): As shown previously in part (1), we know that \( o' \) is owned by \( o \). Furthermore, by the well-formedness of a call stack (see Corollary 6.10 and Definition 6.9), we know for any stack frame \( (p', s')_m \) (where \( k < m < n \)) that \( \text{BaseType}(p') = \text{BaseType}(o') \).

(a) If \( o' \) is an extent instance, then, according to parameter \( C \) (see Table 6.7), its (possibly transitive) caller \( p' \) can only be of \( \text{BaseType}(o') \) if \( p' = o' \). Thus, it holds that \( p' \) is also owned by \( o \).

(b) By assumption we know that \( o' \) is an element instance and we proceed by weak induction on the index \( m \):

(\( m = n - 1 \)): Base case where \( p' \) is the direct caller of \( o' \). By assumption we know that \( o' \) is an element instance, giving rise to the following cases:

(\( o' = \text{element instance of entity or relationship T} \)): According to parameter \( C \) (see Table 6.7) and since \( \text{BaseType}(p') = \text{BaseType}(o') \), \( p' \) can be any of the following instances:
\((p' = o')\): Then, since \(p' = o'\), \(p'\) is also owned by \(o\).

\((p' = \text{instance of type Extent}(\text{Element}(_T)))\): In order for \(p'\) to invoke a method on the owned instance \(o'\), the routine executing on \(p'\) needs to keep an inaccurate reference to the instance \(o'\). Since \(\text{BaseType}(p') = \text{BaseType}(o')\), it follows from Proposition 6.18 that \(o'\) is rooted in \(p'\). Then, it follows from System Invariant 6.3 that \(p'\) has the same owner as \(o'\), and, thus, that \(p'\) is also owned by \(o\).

\((o' = \text{role element instance of type Element}(\text{R.a.}))\): According to parameter \(\mathbb{C}\) (see Table 6.7) and since \(\text{BaseType}(p') = \text{BaseType}(o')\), \(p'\) can be any of the following instances:

\((p' = o')\): Then, since \(p' = o'\), \(p'\) is also owned by \(o\).

\((p' = \text{instance of type Element}(\text{R})))\): In order for \(p'\) to invoke a routine on \(o'\), the routine executing on \(p'\) needs to keep an inaccurate reference to \(o'\). Then, since \(\text{BaseType}(p') = \text{BaseType}(o')\), it follows from Proposition 6.18 that either (i) \(p'\) is rooted in the same extent instance as \(o'\) or that (ii) \(p'\) is not rooted in the same extent instance as \(o'\), but (possibly transitively) invoked by an instance \(y\) which is rooted in the same extent instance as \(o'\). Since \(y\) is rooted in the same extent instance as \(o'\), it holds that \(\text{BaseType}(y) = \text{BaseType}(o')\). In case (i), we know by System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4 that \(p'\) has the same owner as \(o'\) and, thus, that that \(p'\) is also owned by \(o\). In case (ii), we know by System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4 that \(y\) has the same owner as \(o'\) and, thus, that \(y\) is also owned by \(o\).

\((p' = \text{instance of type Extent}(\text{Element}(\text{R})))\): In order for \(p'\) to invoke a method on the owned instance \(o'\), the routine executing on \(p'\) needs to keep an inaccurate reference to the instance \(o'\). Since \(\text{BaseType}(p') = \text{BaseType}(o')\), it follows from Proposition 6.18 that \(o'\) is rooted in \(p'\). Then, it follows from System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4 that \(p'\) has the same owner as \(o'\), and, thus, that \(p'\) is also owned by \(o\).

\((m = n - x)\): Let \(x\) be an arbitrary natural number such that \(1 < x < n - k\). In this case, \(p'\) is a transitive caller of \(o'\) and the direct caller of the receiver instance \(p''\) of the stack frame \((p'', s'')_{m+1}\). By assumption we know that \(o'\) is an element instance, giving rise to the following cases:

\((o' = \text{element instance of entity or relationship T})\): If \(p'' = o'\), then the proof is analogous to the one of the base case. Otherwise, it follows from parameter \(\mathbb{C}\) (see Table 6.7) and from \(\text{BaseType}(p'') = \text{BaseType}(o')\) that \(p''\) must be an instance of type Extent(\text{Element}(\text{T}))\). Then, it follows similarly from parameter \(\mathbb{C}\) and from \(\text{BaseType}(p') = \text{BaseType}(o')\) that \(p' = p''\). By induction, we know that (2) (b) holds for the stack frame \((p'', s'')_{m+1}\). Since \(p' = p''\), we can thus conclude that \(p'\) is also owned by \(o\) or that there exists an index \(l\) and stack frame \((p, s)_{l}\), such that \(k < l < m\) and \(p \neq p'\), where \(p\) is owned by \(o\).
(o' = role element instance of type Element(R.a)): If p'' = o', then the proof is analogous to the one of the base case. Otherwise, it follows from parameter C (see Table 6.7) and from BaseType(p'') = BaseType(o') that p'' must be an instance of type Element(R) or of type Extent(Element(R)).

We consider each case separately:

(p'' = instance of type Element(R)): Then, it follows similarly from parameter C and from BaseType(p') = BaseType(o') that either p' = p'' or that p' is an instance of type Extent(Element(R)). Again, we consider each case separately:

(p' = p''): Then, we know by induction that (2) (b) holds for the stack frame (p'', s'')_m+1. Since p' = p'', we can thus conclude that p' is also owned by o or that there exists an index l and stack frame (p, s), such that k < l < m and p ≠ p', where p is owned by o.

(p' = instance of type Extent(Element(R))): Then, we know by induction that (2) (b) holds for the stack frame (p'', s'')_m+1. Thus, we know that p'' is also owned by o or that p'' is not owned by o, but that there exists an index l and stack frame (p, s), such that k < l < m + 1 and p ≠ p'', where p is owned by o. If p'' is owned by o, then the routine executing on p' needs to keep an inaccurate reference to the instance p'' to invoke a method on the owned instance p''. Since BaseType(p') = BaseType(p''), it follows from Proposition 6.18 that p'' is rooted in p'. Then, it follows from System Invariant 6.3 that p' has the same owner as p'', and, thus, that p' is also owned by o. If p'' is not owned by o, then, according to parameter C and since k < l and p ≠ p'', the current receiver instance p of the stack frame (p, s)_l must be an instance of type Extent(Element(R)). It follows from the well-formedness of a call stack (see Corollary 6.10 and Definition 6.9) that p' = p and, thus, since p is owned by o, that p' is also owned by o.

(p'' = instance of type Extent(Element(R))): Then, it follows similarly from parameter C and from BaseType(p') = BaseType(o') that p' = p''. By induction, we know that (2) (b) holds for the stack frame (p'', s'')_m+1. Since p' = p'', we can thus conclude that p' is also owned by o or that there exists an index l and stack frame (p, s)_l, such that k < l < m and p ≠ p', where p is owned by o.

\[\square\]

6.3 Extended verification technique

In this section, we extend the verification technique presented in Chapter 5 with ownership-based invariants. Henceforth, we refer to the verification technique presented in Chapter 5 as basic verification technique (BVT) and to new verification technique presented in this section as extended verification technique (EVT).
6 OWNERSHIP IN THE RUMER CONTEXT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invariant</th>
<th>Instance of invariant</th>
<th>Referable location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application App invariant</td>
<td>App app</td>
<td>Global variables of app.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For any instance o that is owned by app, locations of o as defined by Table 6.10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship R with participant base types A a and B b</td>
<td>Extent(Element(R)) rx</td>
<td>Content of rx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of rx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For any instance Element(R) r in rx: fields of r, fields of r.a, and fields of r.b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For any instance o that is owned by rx, locations of o as defined by Table 6.10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Element(R) r</td>
<td>Fields of r, fields of r.a, and fields of r.b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For any instance o that is owned by r, locations of o as defined by Table 6.10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity E</td>
<td>Extent(Element(E)) ex</td>
<td>Content of ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of any instance Element(E) e in ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Element(E) e</td>
<td>Fields of e.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.9: Locations on which an invariant is allowed to depend (parameter D, indirectly). This table extends Table 4.4 on page 82 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold. See Table 6.10 for overview of referable locations.

6.3.1 Admissibility criteria

In this section, we revisit the admissibility criteria introduced in Section 4.3 on page 78. To facilitate the declaration of invariants that depend on locations of owned instances, we update the criterion “admissible invariants” as well as the criterion “admissible invocations”.

Admissible invariants

The extended verification technique allows invariants not only to depend on locations that are encapsulated by the invariant-declaring type but also on locations that are owned by the invariant-declaring type. Table 6.9 indirectly instantiates the framework parameter D for the extended verification technique. Differences to the corresponding instantiation of parameter D for the basic verification technique (see Table 4.4 on page 82) are highlighted in bold. As indicated by Table 6.9, the new instantiation of parameter D includes the one for the basic verification technique and complements it with ownership-based invariants. Table 6.9 indicates, for a particular invariant of an instance, the locations on which the
6.3 Extended Verification Technique

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Owned instance</th>
<th>Location referable by owner</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relationship R with participant base types A a and B b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extent(Element(R)) rx</td>
<td>Content of rx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of rx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element(R) r</td>
<td>Fields of r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element(R_) rab</td>
<td>Fields of rab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extent(Element(E)) ex</td>
<td>Content of ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element(E) e</td>
<td>Fields of e.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.10: Locations of owned instance on which an invariant of the instance’s owner is allowed to depend.

Invariant is allowed to depend. However, the actual locations of an owned instance are not listed in Table 6.9, but determined by Table 6.10. For example, if an element instance r of a relationship R with the participant base types A a and B b owns an entity element instance e, then the invariant of r is allowed to depend on the fields of r, r.a, and r.b as well as on the fields of e. Table 6.10 also indicates, for an owned extent instance, that the owner’s invariant is only allowed to depend on the extent instance’s content and fields, but not on any fields of the element instances that reside in the extent instance. This treatment is necessary to decouple exclusive extent ownership from inclusive extent ownership.

According to Table 6.9 and Table 6.10, the Composite element invariant declared on line 18 in Figure 6.1 is admissible since a Composite element instance is the owner of its related Parent extent instance and since the Composite element instance’s invariant only depends on its instance’s locations and on its instance owned Parent extent instance’s locations.

Admissible invocations

As discussed in Section 6.2.3, selective ownership removes some of the liberalness with regard to invocations of mold constructors and mold initializers and requires those invocations to propagate in the direction of a program’s participants relation. Table 6.7 shows the new instantiation of parameter C.

6.3.2 Proof obligations and assumptions

To account for ownership-based invariant declarations, we re-instantiate the parameters X, V, B, and E for the extended verification technique. Since the application resides at the top of a program’s participants relation, no ownership can be imposed on the application singleton instance. Consequently, we only re-instantiate the parameters X, V, B, and E.
Parameters for: default extent constructor of an entity or relationship T

Current receiver: Extent(Extent(T)) tx

X: For any instance Extent(Extent(T)) tx' such that tx ≠ tx': invariant of tx' and invariants of all instances Extent(T) t' in tx'.

For any entity or relationship S such that S ≠ T and T is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent(Extent(S)) sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Extent(S) s in sx.

V: Invariant of tx.

Invariant of tx's owner.

B: n/a

E: Invariant of tx.

Table 6.11: Parameters X, V, B, and E for default entity and relationship extent constructors. This table extends Table 5.6 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold.

Parameters for: extent constructor of an entity or relationship T

Current receiver: Extent(Extent(T)) tx

X: For any instance Extent(Extent(T)) tx' such that tx ≠ tx': invariant of tx' and invariants of all instances Extent(T) t' in tx'.

For any entity or relationship S such that S ≠ T and T is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent(Extent(S)) sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Extent(S) s in sx.

V: Invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Extent(T) t in tx.

Invariant of tx's owner.

B: If callee = tx, then invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Extent(T) t in tx.

If callee = instance Extent(T) t in tx, then invariant of t.

If callee = instance Element(T) t in tx and T = relationship with participant base types A and B that is A-benign and/or B-benign, then B-uniqueness and/or A-uniqueness assertion of invariant of tx, resp.

E: Invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Extent(T) t in tx.

Table 6.12: Parameters X, V, B, and E for programmer-defined entity and relationship extent constructors. This table extends Table 5.7 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold.

for (possibly default) extent constructors, extent methods, element methods, and mold constructors and initializers. Table 6.11, Table 6.12, Table 6.13, Table 6.14, Table 6.15, Table 6.16, Table 6.17, and Table 6.18 show the corresponding instantiations.

Since selective ownership is tied to a program’s participants relation (see System Invariant 6.2) and since the parameters X, V, B, and E of the basic verification technique are also stated relative to a program’s participants relation, the new instantiations of the parameters only slightly differ from their corresponding instantiations for the basic verification technique (see Section 5.2 on page 91). We highlight the differences between the two instantiations in bold. The highlights indicate that the extended verification technique only differs from the basic verification technique in its instantiation of parameter V. This parameter includes the invariant of a current receiver instance’s owner in addition to
Parameters for: extent method of an entity or relationship T

Current receiver: Extent\langle Element(T)\rangle \text{ tx}

X: For any instance Extent\langle Element(T)\rangle \text{ tx': invariant of tx' and invariants of all instances Element(T) t' in tx'}. For any entity or relationship S such that S \neq T and T is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent\langle Element(S)\rangle \text{ sx}, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Element\langle S\rangle s in sx.

V: Invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element\langle T\rangle t in tx.

Invariant of tx's owner.

B: If callee = tx, then invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element\langle T\rangle t in tx.

If callee = instance Element\langle T\rangle t in tx, then invariant of t.

If callee = instance Element\langle T\rangle t in tx and T = relationship with participant base types A and B that is A-benign and/or B-benign, then B-uniqueness and/or A-uniqueness assertion of invariant of tx, resp.

E: Invariant of tx and invariants of all instances Element\langle T\rangle t in tx.

Table 6.13: Parameters X, V, B, and E for entity and relationship extent methods. This table extends Table 5.8 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold.

Parameters for: element method of an entity or free relationship T

Current receiver: Element\langle T\rangle t

X: Invariant of t. For any entity or relationship S such that S \neq T and T is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent\langle Element(S)\rangle \text{ sx}, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Element\langle S\rangle s in sx.

V: Invariant of t.

Invariant of instance Extent\langle Element(T)\rangle \text{ tx in which t resides}.

Invariant of t's owner.

B: If callee = t, then invariant of t.

E: Invariant of t.

Preservation of invariant of instance Extent\langle Element(T)\rangle \text{ tx in which t resides}.

Table 6.14: Parameters X, V, B, and E for entity and free, non-interposed relationship element methods. This table extends Table 5.9 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold.

Adjunct parameter for: element method of an A-benign relationship R

Participants: base types A and B and role identifiers a and b, resp.

Current receiver: Element\langle R\rangle r

X⁺: B-uniqueness assertion of invariant of instance Extent\langle Element(R)\rangle \text{ rx in which r resides}.

Table 6.15: Adjunct for parameter X for unilaterally benign, non-interposed relationship element methods. This parameter conjoins with the parameters listed in Table 6.14 and, if the relationship is inversely benign or malign with the parameters listed in Table 6.15 or Table 6.16, resp. This table extends Table 5.10 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold.
Adjunct parameter for: element method of a B-malign relationship R
Participants: base types A and B and role identifiers a and b, resp.
Current receiver: Element(R) r

\( V^+ \): Invariants of all instances Element(R) \( r' \neq r \) such that \( r'.b = r.b \).

\( E^+ \): Preservation of invariants of all instances Element(R) \( r' \neq r \) such that \( r'.b = r.b \).

Table 6.16: Adjuncts for parameters \( V \) and \( E \) for unilaterally malign, non-interposed relationship element methods. These parameters conjoin with the parameters listed in Table 6.14 and, if the relationship is inversely benign or malign with the parameters listed in Table 6.15 or Table 6.16, resp. This table extends Table 5.11 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters for:</th>
<th>element method of a role R.a declared by relationship R</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current receiver:</td>
<td>Element(R.a) ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( X ):</td>
<td>For any entity or relationship S such that S ( \neq R ) and R is not a direct or transitive participant of S: for any instance Extent(Element(S)) sx, invariant of sx and invariants of all instances Element(S) s in sx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( V ):</td>
<td>Invariants of all instances Element(R) r such that r.a = ra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invariant of r.a's owner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E ):</td>
<td>Preservation of invariants of all instances Element(R) r such that r.a = ra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservation of invariant of instance Extent(Element(R)) rx in which all instances Element(R) r with r.a = ra reside.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.17: Parameters \( X \), \( V \), \( B \), and \( E \) for interposed relationship element methods. This table extends Table 5.12 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters for:</th>
<th>mold constructor or initializer of an entity or relationship T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current receiver:</td>
<td>Mold(T) t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( X ):</td>
<td>None.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( V ):</td>
<td>None.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( B ):</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E ):</td>
<td>None.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.18: Parameters \( X \), \( V \), \( B \), and \( E \) for entity and non-interposed relationship mold constructors and programmer-defined initializers. This table extends Table 5.13 with selective ownership, differences are highlighted in bold.

the invariants of the current receiver instance. The instantiation of parameter \( V \) relies on System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4, which guarantee, in the case of inclusive ownership, that element instances have the same owner as the extent instance in which the element instances are rooted.
6.3.3 Soundness

To prove the extended verification technique sound, we rely on the soundness of the basic verification technique (see Section 5.3 on page 103). As the extended verification technique only differs in its instantiations of the parameters \( C, D, \) and \( V \) from the basic verification technique, we must reconsider those propositions from Section 5.3 that involve the notion of a call stack and the concept of an invalidator. We have already elaborated on the effects of selective ownership on a program’s call stack in Section 6.2.3. Next, we discuss how the concept of an invalidator is affected by selective ownership.

Corollary 6.24 relies on the definition of an invalidator introduced in Definition 5.14 on page 107 and accounts for the fact that invariants may depend on locations of owned instances (see Section 6.3.1). We highlight the differences between Proposition 5.15 on page 107 and its updated version in bold:

**Corollary 6.24 (Restatement of “set of invalidators” in EVT):** For the possible instances in a Rumer program that is successfully type checked and verified using the extended verification technique, the invalidators for such an instance \( o \) are:

- For an application instance \( o \): the application instance \( o \); **if \( o \) exclusively owns an extent instance \( tx \), then the extent instance \( tx \); if \( o \) inclusively owns an extent instance \( tx \), then the extent instance \( tx \) as well as all the element instances \( t \) residing in \( tx \) (including the role element instances related by such an element instance \( t \) if \( tx \) is a relationship extent instance).**

- For a relationship extent instance \( o \): the relationship extent instance \( o \), all relationship element instances residing in \( o \), and all role element instances related by the relationship element instances residing in \( o \); **if \( o \) exclusively owns an extent instance \( tx \), then the extent instance \( tx \); if \( o \) inclusively owns an extent instance \( tx \), then the extent instance \( tx \) as well as all the element instances \( t \) residing in \( tx \) (including the role element instances related by such an element instance \( t \) if \( tx \) is a relationship extent instance).**

- For a relationship element instance \( o \) that is neither A-malign nor B-malign (first four rows in Table 5.4): the relationship element instance \( o \), \( o \)’s role element instances, and the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides; **if \( o \) exclusively owns an extent instance \( tx \), then the extent instance \( tx \); if \( o \) inclusively owns an extent instance \( tx \), then the extent instance \( tx \) as well as all the element instances \( t \) residing in \( tx \) (including the role element instances related by such an element instance \( t \) if \( tx \) is a relationship extent instance).**

- For a relationship element instance \( o \) of a relationship \( R \) with participant base types \( A \) and \( B \) and role identifiers \( a \) and \( b \), respectively, that is A-malign and/or B-malign (last five rows in Table 5.4): the relationship element instance \( o \), \( o \)’s role element instances, all relationship element instances that reside in the relationship extent instance of \( o \) and that have the role element instance \( o.a \) and/or \( o.b \), respectively, as participant, and the relationship extent instance in which \( o \) resides; **if \( o \) exclusively owns an extent
instance \(tx\), then the extent instance \(tx\); if \(o\) inclusively owns an extent instance \(tx\), then the extent instance \(tx\) as well as all the element instances \(t\) residing in \(tx\) (including the role element instances related by such an element instance \(t\) if \(tx\) is a relationship extent instance).

- For a role element instance \(o\): n/a.
- For an entity extent instance \(o\): the entity extent instance \(o\) and all entity element instances residing in \(o\).
- For an entity element instance \(o\): the entity element instance \(o\) and the entity extent instance in which \(o\) resides.

**Proof 6.25:** Corollary 6.24 is a restatement of Proposition 5.15 on page 107 based on the new instantiation of parameter \(D\) (see Table 6.9) and on System Invariant 6.3 and System Invariant 6.4. System Invariant 6.3 guarantees that owned entity and relationship element instances have the same owner as the extent instance in which the entity and relationship element instances reside and, thus, that modifications of any element instances residing in the same extent instance may only compromise the ownership-based invariant of the common owner. System Invariant 6.4 guarantees that owned role element instances have the same owner as the relationship element instances that relate the role element instances and, thus, that modifications of any role element instances that are related by the same relationship element instance may only compromise the ownership-based invariant of the common owner.

To capture the distinction between the basic verification technique and the extended verification technique, we consider whether an invalidator takes care to preserve (or even re-establish) the invariants it breaks. Depending on the proof obligation \(E\) imposed on the routines executing on an invalidator, we divide invalidators into *responsible* and *irresponsible* invalidators:

**Definition 6.26 (Responsible invalidator):** An instance \(o\) is a responsible invalidator for an instance \(o'\) if and only if \(o\) is an invalidator for \(o'\) and every routine executing on \(o\) preserves or establishes the invariant of \(o'\).

**Definition 6.27 (Irresponsible invalidator):** An instance \(o\) is an irresponsible invalidator for an instance \(o'\) if and only if \(o\) is an invalidator for \(o'\) and every routine executing on \(o\) neither preserves nor establishes the invariant of \(o'\).

Lemma 6.32 delimits the base types of responsible invalidators. Lemma 6.34 relates irresponsible invalidators to ownership. The proofs of those lemmas rely on the following two propositions:

**Proposition 6.28 (Base types of owning and owned instances):** For any instance \(o\), if \(o\) is the owner of an instance \(o'\), then it holds that \(\text{BaseType}(o) \neq \text{BaseType}(o')\).

**Proof 6.29:** Proposition 6.28 follows directly from System Invariant 6.2 and from System Invariant 4.1 on page 77.

\[\square\]
Proposition 6.30 (Base types of depending instances): For any instance \( o \), if the invariant of \( o \) is allowed to depend on locations of an instance \( o' \), then it either holds that \( \text{BaseType}(o) = \text{BaseType}(o') \) or that \( o \) is owned and that \( o \) is the owner of \( o' \).

Proof 6.31: Proposition 6.30 follows directly from the routine-specific instantiations of parameter \( D \) (see Table 6.9 and Table 6.10) as well as from Proposition 6.28. \( \square \)

The lemma that delimits the base type of a responsible invalidator is as follows:

Lemma 6.32 (Responsible invalidator and base types): An instance \( o \) is a responsible invalidator for an instance \( o' \) if and only if \( o \) is an invalidator for \( o' \) and \( \text{BaseType}(o) = \text{BaseType}(o') \).

Proof 6.33: Lemma 6.32 follows from Corollary 6.24, Definition 6.26, Proposition 6.28, Corollary 5.17 on page 108, and the routine-specific instantiations of parameter \( E \) (see Table 5.5 on page 97, Table 6.11, Table 6.12, Table 6.13, Table 6.14, Table 6.15, Table 6.16, Table 6.17, and Table 6.18). \( \square \)

The lemma that relates irresponsible invalidators to ownership is as follows:

Lemma 6.34 (Irresponsible invalidators and ownership): For any instance \( o, o' \) is an irresponsible invalidator for an instance \( o' \) if and only if \( o' \) is the owner of \( o \), if \( o \) is owned.

Proof 6.35: We prove Lemma 6.34 by showing both directions of the biconditional:

(\( \Rightarrow \)): By assumption, we know that \( o \) is an irresponsible invalidator for \( o' \) and that \( o \) is owned. By Definition 6.27, we know further that \( o \) is an invalidator for \( o' \) and that any routine executing on \( o \) neither preserves nor establishes the invariant of \( o' \) in the routine’s final state. From Definition 6.26 and Lemma 6.32 it thus follows that \( \text{BaseType}(o) \neq \text{BaseType}(o') \). Since \( o \) is an invalidator for \( o' \), the invariant of \( o' \) must depend on locations to which \( o \) can write. According to parameter \( U \) (see Table 4.3 on page 80), the instances of these locations must all be of base type \( \text{BaseType}(o) \). Since \( \text{BaseType}(o) \neq \text{BaseType}(o') \), it follows from Proposition 6.30 that \( o' \) is the owner of \( o \).

(\( \Leftarrow \)): By assumption, we know that \( o \) is owned and that \( o' \) is the owner of \( o \). By System Invariant 6.2 and Corollary 6.24 we know that \( o \) is an invalidator for \( o' \). By Proposition 6.28 we know that \( \text{BaseType}(o) \neq \text{BaseType}(o') \). By considering the routine-specific instantiations of parameter \( E \) (see Table 5.5 on page 97, Table 6.11, Table 6.12, Table 6.13, Table 6.14, Table 6.15, Table 6.16, Table 6.17, and Table 6.18), we know further that, for a routine execution \( r \) on an instance \( o \), \( r \) neither preserves nor establishes invariants of any instances of a different base type than \( \text{BaseType}(o) \). Since \( \text{BaseType}(o) \neq \text{BaseType}(o') \), no routine execution on \( o \) preserves or establishes the invariant of \( o' \), and, thus, \( o \) is an irresponsible invalidator for \( o' \). \( \square \)

The next two propositions guarantee that invalidators are either responsible or irrespon-
Proposition 6.36 (Invalidators are responsible or irresponsible): For any instance \( o \), if \( o \) is an invalidator for an instance \( o' \), then \( o \) is a responsible invalidator or irresponsible invalidator for \( o' \).

Proof 6.37: We prove Proposition 6.36 by showing that the listing of invalidators provided in Corollary 6.24 only contains responsible or irresponsible invalidators. According to Lemma 6.34, all the invalidators highlighted in bold in Corollary 6.24 are irresponsible invalidators. The remaining invalidators listed in Corollary 6.24, on the other hand, are all of the same base type as the instances for which they are invalidators, and, thus, by Lemma 6.32, those invalidators are responsible invalidators.

Proposition 6.38 (Responsible and irresponsible invalidators are disjoint): For any instance \( o \), the set of instances \( O' \) for which \( o \) is a responsible invalidator and the set of instances \( O'' \) for which \( o \) is an irresponsible invalidator are disjoint.

Proof 6.39: By Lemma 6.32, we know that the set of instances \( O' \) for which \( o \) is a responsible invalidator must be of the same base type as \( o \). By Lemma 6.34 and Proposition 6.28, we know further that the set of instances \( O'' \) for which \( o \) is an irresponsible invalidator must be of a different base type than \( o \). Since the set of instances \( O' \) and \( O'' \) contain instances of pairwise different base types, those sets are disjoint.

Given the differentiation between responsible invalidators and irresponsible invalidators, we can relate the invalidators of the basic verification technique (see Proposition 5.15 on page 107) to the ones of the extended verification technique (see Corollary 6.24) as follows:

Proposition 6.40 (Invalidators of BVT versus invalidators of EVT): The invalidators of the basic verification technique relate to the invalidators of the extended verification technique as follows:

\[
\text{Invalidators}_{\text{BVT}} = \text{Invalidators}_{\text{responsible}}
\]

\[
\text{Invalidators}_{\text{EVT}} = \text{Invalidators}_{\text{responsible}} \cup \text{Invalidators}_{\text{irresponsible}}
\]

Proof 6.41: Proposition 6.40 follows directly from the definition of an invalidator in the extended verification technique (see Corollary 6.24), from the fact that invalidators are either responsible invalidators or irresponsible invalidators, but not both (see Proposition 6.36 and Proposition 6.38), from the fact that an invalidator is at most an irresponsible invalidator for its owner (see Lemma 6.34), and from the fact that only the extended verification technique allows invariants to depend on locations of owned instances (see Table 4.4 on page 82 versus Table 6.9).

Relying on Proposition 6.40, we can restate the soundness theorem for the basic verification technique (see Theorem 5.35 on page 113) as follows (we highlight the differences between Theorem 5.35 and the new Corollary 6.42 in bold):
Corollary 6.42 (Restatement of “Soundness of BVT”): For any routine execution $r$ on an instance $o$ in a successfully type checked and verified Rumer program, if the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{v(o,r)}$ hold in the initial state of $r$’s execution, then:

1. in all semi-visible states $s_i$ of $r$’s execution:
   - (a) at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is a responsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_i$;
   - (b) if $s_i$ is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation $r'$ on an instance $o'$, the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{v(o',r')}$ hold;
2. in the final state $s_{final}$ of $r$’s execution: the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is a responsible invalidator or irresponsible invalidator are preserved (since $s_0$) and also established for any of these instances for which $o$ is a guarantor, and the invariants $\mathcal{X}_{v(o,r)}$ hold.

Proof 6.43: Corollary 6.42 is a restatement of Theorem 5.35 on page 113 based on Proposition 6.40 and on the updated account of a well-formed call stack (see Corollary 6.10 and Definition 6.9).

Before stating the main soundness Theorem 6.53, we introduce an auxiliary corollary as well as auxiliary lemmas that are used in the proof of the main soundness theorem.

The following corollary is a restatement of Proposition 5.22 on page 109, which gives an upper bound on the invariants lost between two consecutive semi-visible states between which control remains within a routine. We highlight the differences between Proposition 5.22 and its updated version below in bold:

Corollary 6.44 (Restatement of “Invalidators and lost invariants” in EVT): For any routine execution $r$ on an instance $o$, consider any consecutive semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$ of $r$’s execution between which no routine is invoked (i.e., $s_i$ is even and control remains within $r$). Then, at most the invariants of those instances for which $o$ is a responsible invalidator or irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_i$ and $s_{i+1}$.

Proof 6.45: Corollary 6.44 is a restatement of Proposition 5.22 on page 109 based on the updated concept of an invalidator (see Corollary 6.24) as well as on Lemma 6.32.

The succeeding auxiliary lemmas are all based on the concept of a quasi-irresponsible invalidator. Such an invalidator is not an invalidator for an instance, but guaranteed to be preceded by one on the call stack. The instances $p'$ in Lemma 6.22 that are not owned by $o$ are exactly quasi-irresponsible invalidators. Our choice of terminology may be surprising since a quasi-irresponsible invalidator is not an invalidator at all. However, as we will see, the term quasi-irresponsible invalidator allows for a succinct formulation of the main soundness Theorem 6.53.

Definition 6.46 (Quasi-irresponsible invalidator): An instance $o$ is a quasi-irresponsible invalidator for an instance $o'$ if and only if $o$ is not an invalidator for $o'$ but (possibly transitively) invoked by a caller $p$ such that $p \neq o$ and such that $p$ is an irresponsible
invalidator for $o'$.

The following lemma indicates that a callee does not expect the invariants of those instances for which its (possibly transitive) callers are irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidators:

**Lemma 6.47 (Expectations towards caller-(quasi)-irresponsible invariants):** For any routine execution $r$ on an instance $o$, the routine $r$ does not expect any invariants of instances for which the routine’s (possibly transitive) callers are irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidators.

**Proof 6.48:** From Lemma 6.34 and System Invariant 6.2, it follows that the base type of an irresponsible invalidator for an instance is a direct participant of the base type of that instance. Furthermore, from Definition 6.46 and parameter $\mathbb{C}$ (see Table 6.7), it follows that the base type of a quasi-irresponsible invalidator for an instance is a direct or transitive participant of the base type of that instance. Thus, it follows from the well-formedness of a call stack (see Corollary 6.10 and Definition 6.9), from the acyclicity of the participants relation (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77), and from parameter $\mathbb{C}$ (see Table 6.7), that the base type of the callee $o$ is a direct or transitive participant of the base type of any instance for which a (possibly transitive) caller of $o$ is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator. According to the routine-specific instantiations of parameter $\mathbb{X}$ (see Table 5.5 on page 97, Table 6.11, Table 6.12, Table 6.13, Table 6.14, Table 6.15, Table 6.16, Table 6.17, and Table 6.18), an instance whose invariant is expected in the visible states of the routine execution $r$ on the callee $o$ is of $\text{BaseType}(o)$ or of any base type of which $\text{BaseType}(o)$ is not a direct or transitive participant. Therefore, the invariant of any instance for which a (possibly transitive) caller of $o$ is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator is not expected in the visible states of routine $r$.

Inversely, the following two lemmas indicate what kind of invalidator the caller becomes for those instances for which the callee is a irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator:

**Lemma 6.49 (Responsibility for callee-irresponsible invariants):** For any invocation of a routine $r'$ on an instance $o'$ made during the execution of a routine $r$ on an instance $o$, for the instances for which the callee $o'$ is an irresponsible invalidator, the caller $o$ is either a responsible, irresponsible or, quasi-irresponsible invalidator.

**Proof 6.50:** By assumption, we know that the callee $o'$ is an irresponsible invalidator and, thus, by Lemma 6.34, we know that $o'$ is owned and that it is an irresponsible invalidator for its owner. According to Lemma 6.22, the caller $o$ must either be the owner of $o'$ or an instance that is a direct or transitive callee of the owner of $o'$. We consider each case separately:

($o = \text{owner of } o'$): By assumption, we know that $o'$ is an irresponsible invalidator for its owner $o$, which also is its caller, by case distinction. According to Corollary 6.24
and Lemma 6.32, an owner is its own responsible invalidator, and, thus, the caller \( o \) is a responsible invalidator for the instance for which the callee \( o' \) is an irresponsible invalidator.

\( o = \text{callee of owner of } o' \): By assumption, we know that \( o' \) is an irresponsible invalidator for its owner. Furthermore, by case distinction, we know that the caller \( o \) is (possibly transitively) called by the owner of \( o' \). According to Lemma 6.22, \( o \) is either owned by the owner of \( o' \) or is not owned by the owner of \( o' \) but is (possibly transitively) invoked by a caller that is owned by the owner of \( o' \). If \( o \) is owned by the owner of \( o' \), then it follows from Lemma 6.34 that \( o \) is an irresponsible invalidator for the instance for which the callee \( o' \) is an irresponsible invalidator. Otherwise, \( o \) is not a responsible invalidator for the owner of \( o' \) either (see Lemma 6.32) and, hence, not an invalidator for the owner of \( o' \) at all (see Proposition 6.36). Thus, it follows from Definition 6.46 that the caller \( o \) is a quasi-irresponsible invalidator for the instance for which the callee \( o' \) is an irresponsible invalidator.

\[ \square \]

**Lemma 6.51 (Responsibility for callee-quasi-irresponsible invariants):** For any invocation of a routine \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \) made during the execution of a routine \( r \) on an instance \( o \), for the instances for which the callee \( o' \) is a quasi-irresponsible invalidator, the caller \( o \) is either an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator.

**Proof 6.52:** Lemma 6.51 follows immediately from Definition 6.46, Proposition 6.36, and Lemma 6.22.

We are finally in the position to state the main soundness theorem for the extended verification technique. We highlight the differences between Corollary 6.42 and the new Theorem 6.53 in bold:

**Theorem 6.53 (Soundness of EVT):** For any routine execution \( r \) on an instance \( o \) in a successfully type checked and verified Rumer program, if the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) hold in the initial state of \( r \)'s execution, then:

1. in all semi-visible states \( s_i \) of \( r \)'s execution:
   a. at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_i \);
   b. if \( s_i \) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \), the invariants \( X_{(o',r')} \) hold;
2. in the final state \( s_{\text{final}} \) of \( r \)'s execution: the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible invalidator are preserved (since \( s_0 \)) and also established for any of these instances for which \( o \) is a guarantor, and the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) hold.

**Proof 6.54:** We prove Theorem 6.53 by strong induction on the number \( k \) of transitive routine invocations made during the execution of a routine \( r \). Let \( k \) be an arbitrary natural number of transitive routine invocations. By induction, we can assume that the theorem
holds for any natural number \( j \) of transitive routine invocations such that \( j < k \) and we must show that it also holds for \( k \) transitive routine invocations. Since the proof relies on the soundness of the basic verification technique (Corollary 6.42) and remains generic with regard to the aspects specific to the extended verification technique, we collate several routine kinds (see Table 6.7) and consider the following two cases:

**Case 1 (Action, method, and extent constructor):** This case subsumes all routine kinds that are allowed to invoke other routines. According to Table 6.7, these routines are: application actions, relationship extent constructors and entity extent constructors, relationship extent methods and entity extent methods, non-interposed and interposed relationship element methods and entity element methods. For the execution of such a routine \( r \) on the instance \( o \), we assume that the invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{(o,r)} \) hold in \( r \)'s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for \( k \) transitive routine invocations made during \( r \)'s execution:

**(1):** To prove (1), we proceed by secondary weak induction on the index \( i \) of semi-visible states of \( r \)'s execution:

\[(i = 0):\] Base case:
(a) Immediate since no invariants can yet have been lost.
(b) Vacuous since the initial state is not a pre-state of a routine invocation.

\[(i = n + 1):\] Let \( n \) be an arbitrary natural number. By inner induction, we can assume that (1) holds in the \( n \)-th semi-visible state \( s_n \) and we must show that it holds in state \( s_{n+1} \). There are two cases to be considered:

\[(n + 1 \text{ is odd}):\] Control remains within \( r \) between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \).
(a) By inner induction, we know that (1) (a) holds in \( s_n \) and, thus, that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_n \). By Corollary 6.44, we know further that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible or irresponsible invalidator are lost between \( s_n \) and \( s_{n+1} \). Consequently, we can conclude that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

(b) If \( s_{n+1} \) is a pre-state of a direct routine invocation \( r' \) on an instance \( o' \), then we must show that the invariants \( \mathcal{X}_{(o',r')} \) hold in \( s_{n+1} \). As shown previously in part (1) (a), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which the caller \( o \) is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \). In the proof of the soundness theorem for the basic verification technique (Corollary 6.42) we have already shown that the invariants of those instances for which the caller \( o \) is a responsible invalidator are either not expected by the callee \( o' \) or re-established before the routine
invocation. Furthermore, we have indirectly shown, by relating the invariants $X_{o',r}$ expected by the callee to the invariants $X_{o,r}$ expected by the caller, that the invariants of instances for which transitive callers of $o'$ are responsible invalidators are either not expected by the callee $o'$ or have been re-established before the invocation of $r$. Given the disjointness of responsible and irresponsible invalidators (see Proposition 6.38) and the fact that quasi-irresponsible invalidators are no invalidators (see Definition 6.46), it remains to be shown that the invariants of those instances for which the caller $o$ or any of its (possibly transitive) callers is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are either not expected by the callee $o'$ or re-established before the routine invocation. From Lemma 6.47 it follows immediately that the invariants of those instances for which the caller $o$ or any of its (possibly transitive) callers is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are not expected by the callee $o'$, and, thus, we are guaranteed that the invariants $X_{o',r}$ hold in $s_{n+1}$. 

(n + 1 is even): A direct routine invocation $r'$ on an instance $o'$ is made between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$.

(a) By inner induction, we know that (1) holds in $s_n$ and, thus, that at most the invariants of those instances for which the caller $o$ is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_0$ and $s_n$ and that the invariants $X_{o',r'}$ hold in $s_n$. Since there must be strictly fewer than $k$ routine invocations made during the execution of $r'$, we know, by outer induction, that Theorem 6.53 holds for the execution of $r'$. Since the invariants $X_{o',r'}$ hold in $s_n$, we know further that (1) and (2) hold for $r'$. In particular, we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which the callee $o'$ is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and that the invariants of those instances for which $o'$ is a responsible invalidator are preserved between $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ and also established in $s_{n+1}$ for any of these instances for which $o'$ is a guarantor. In the proof of the soundness theorem for the basic verification technique (Corollary 6.42) we have already shown that none of the invariants for which the callee $o'$ is a responsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$. Given the disjointness of responsible and irresponsible invalidators (see Proposition 6.38) and the fact that quasi-irresponsible invalidators are no invalidators (see Definition 6.46), it remains to be shown that either none of the invariants for which the callee $o'$ is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states $s_n$ and $s_{n+1}$ or that the caller $o$ is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator for the instances for which $o'$ is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator. From Lemma 6.49 and Lemma 6.51 it follows immediately that the caller $o$ is a responsi-
ble, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator for the instances for which \( o' \) is an irresponsible invalidator and that the caller \( o \) is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator for the instances for which \( o' \) is a quasi-irresponsible invalidator, respectively. Thus, we can conclude that at most the invariants of those instances for which the caller \( o \) is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{n+1} \).

(b) Vacuous since state \( s_{n+1} \) is not a pre-state of a routine invocation.

(2): As shown previously in part (1), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible, irresponsible, or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{\text{final}} \). In the proof of the soundness theorem for the basic verification technique (Corollary 6.42) we have already shown that the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible invalidator are preserved and also established for any of these instances for which \( o \) is a guarantor. Furthermore, we have indirectly shown, by considering the invariants \( X_{\mathcal{K}(o,r)} \) expected by \( o \), that the invariants of instances for which a (possibly transitive) caller of \( o \) is a responsible invalidator are either not expected by \( o \) or established. Given the disjointness of responsible and irresponsible invalidators (see Proposition 6.38) and the fact that quasi-irresponsible invalidators are no invalidators (see Definition 6.46), it remains to be shown that the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) or any of its (possibly transitive) callers is a irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are either not included in \( X_{\mathcal{K}(o,r)} \) or are established. Since \( o \) may be a caller of itself (see parameter \( C \), Table 6.7), it follows immediately from Lemma 6.47 that the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) or any of its (possibly transitive) callers is a responsible invalidator are preserved and also established for any of these instances for which \( o \) is a guarantor, and that the invariants \( X_{\mathcal{K}(o,r)} \) hold in \( s_{\text{final}} \).

**Case 2 (Default extent constructor, mold constructor, and mold initializer):** This case subsumes all routine kinds that are not allowed to invoke other routines. According to Table 6.7, these routines are: default relationship extent constructors and default entity extent constructors, non-interposed relationship mold constructors and entity mold constructors, and non-interposed relationship mold initializers and entity mold initializers. For the execution of such a routine \( r \) on the instance \( o \), we assume that the invariants \( X_{\mathcal{K}(o,r)} \) hold in \( r \)'s initial state and show that consequences (1) and (2) hold for \( k \) transitive routine invocations made during \( r \)'s execution:

(1): Since the routine \( r \) cannot invoke any other routines (see Table 6.7), we prove (1) by investigating the only two semi-visible states of \( r \)'s execution:

**Initial state:**

(a) Immediate since no invariants can yet have been lost.
(2): As shown previously in part (1), we know that at most the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible or irresponsible invalidator are lost between the semi-visible states \( s_0 \) and \( s_{\text{final}} \). In the proof of the soundness theorem for the basic verification technique (Corollary 6.42) we have already shown that the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible invalidator are preserved and also established for any of these instances for which \( o \) is a guarantor. Furthermore, we have indirectly shown, by considering the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) expected by \( o \), that the invariants of instances for which a (possibly transitive) caller of \( o \) is a responsible invalidator are either not expected by \( o \) or established. Given the disjointness of responsible and irresponsible invalidators (see Proposition 6.38) and the fact that quasi-irresponsible invalidators are no invalidators (see Definition 6.46), it remains to be shown that the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is an irresponsible invalidator or for which any of its (possibly transitive) callers is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are either not included in \( X_{(o,r)} \) or are established. Since \( o \) may be a caller of itself (see parameter \( C \), Table 6.7), it follows immediately from Lemma 6.47 that the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) or any of its (possibly transitive) callers is an irresponsible or quasi-irresponsible invalidator are not not included in \( X_{(o,r)} \), and, thus, we can conclude that the invariants of those instances for which \( o \) is a responsible invalidator are preserved and also established for any of these instances for which \( o \) is a guarantor, and that the invariants \( X_{(o,r)} \) hold in \( s_{\text{final}} \).
The two schemes, however, differ in their applied encapsulation discipline. Whereas ownership types typically enforce the owner-as-dominator discipline, Universe Types typically enforce the owner-as-modifier discipline [96]. The owner-as-dominator discipline requires all reference chains to an object to pass through the object’s owner. The owner-as-modifier discipline, on the other hand, enforces a less stringent alias restriction and only requires modifications of an object to be initiated by the object’s owner. To compensate for their restrictiveness, ownership types allow owned objects to establish back-references to their owners. Universe Types, in contrast, forbid modifying reference chains to leave a context. This restriction makes the Universe Type system attractive for program verification since it forbids call-backs into owners. The amenability of Universe Types for program verification have also been demonstrated in the context of Oval [110], a variant of an ownership-type-based language. As opposed to other ownership type systems [93, 94, 95, 97], Oval’s types system enforces an owner-as-modifier discipline and employs effect annotations to deal with call-backs.

Selective ownership is most closely related to Universe-type-based ownership since it is similarly lightweight thanks to the use of ownership modifiers. However, as detailed in Section 6.1, selective ownership allows for the sharing of instances that are transitively reachable through owners. This relaxation is thanks to Rumer’s separation between “heap topology” (achieved by the Matryoshka Principle, see also discussion in Section 4.4.2 on page 87) and unique ownership restriction and facilitates a hybrid ownership scheme in which owned and shared instances coexist.

6.4.2 Invariant-based verification techniques

A wide palette of techniques for the verification of object-oriented programs has been elaborated up to date. Most of these techniques rely on invariants [20] for program verification. More recently, techniques have been suggested that are not based on invariants but leverage forms of heap partitioning to verify programs in the presence of shared mutable state. Parkinson and Bierman [23, 24, 25] introduce the ideas of separation logic [22] to Java. An alternative expression of separation is used in works on dynamic frames [27, 28, 29, 30] where pure methods or ghost fields denote a set of locations. Assertions on the disjointness of such dynamic frames then facilitates heap-local reasoning. Parkinson’s and Bierman’s abstract predicates bear resemblance with the invariants of our work. Similarly to a relationship invariant, an abstract predicate imposes consistency conditions on the object structures in the heap. However, abstract predicates do not entail an invariant semantics. This offers some flexibility to the programmer who does not need to adhere to a discipline, but sacrifices data type induction [25, 111].

In the remainder of this section we concentrate on object-oriented verification techniques that are based on invariants since our verification technique is also based on invariants. Presently, no other verification techniques for relationship-based programming languages have been devised. We first review invariant-based verification techniques that establish
a visible-state semantics for invariants and then review invariant-based verification techniques that are not based on a visible-state semantics for invariants. We begin the discussion of visible-state verification techniques with the ownership technique since this is the visible-state verification technique that is, despite the difference in underlying programming model, most closely related to our verification technique.

Visible-state verification techniques

Ownership technique. The ownership technique [12, 16] is a visible-state verification technique that employs Universe Types [12, 96, 98, 99, 100] to enforce a tree topology on program’s heap. Based on this heap topology, the technique can accommodate not only single-object invariants but also certain forms of multi-object invariants (invariants at the one-side of one-to-many dependencies) at a small number of proof obligations. The proof obligations imposed by the ownership technique are relative to the declaring class, and the technique is thus entirely modular.

Our verification technique resembles the ownership technique in two aspects: it leverages heap stratification to prevent transitive call-backs and it facilitates modular reasoning about multi-object invariants. However, our verification technique differs from the ownership technique in the underlying heap stratification and in the separation between heap stratification and unique ownership. As discussed in Section 4.4.2 on page 87, the stratification induced by the Matryoshka Principle allows entity and relationship instances to participate in several relationship instances and to change their relationship participation at run-time. The separation between heap stratification and unique ownership, on the other hand, allows a programmer to treat selective ownership as an orthogonal mechanism that can be superimposed, if desired, on top of the heap stratification induced by the Matryoshka Principle. This possibility for customization is beneficial as it allows a programmer to choose the most appropriate combination of mechanisms, depending on the situation. As a result, our verification technique can accommodate a larger set of verification problems than the ownership technique (see examples in Section 7.1), but still at a small number of proof obligations. These proof obligations are modular, however, rely on the non-modular premise that a program’s participants relation is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77) and that entity and relationship fields do not point to instances of a base type of which the declaring base type is a direct or transitive participant (see Section 6.2.3). In Section 7.2 on page 204, we discuss the elaboration of a module system as part of future work to improve the scalability of both the Rumer programming language and our verification technique. Such a module system would certainly also make those semantic checks modular.

In addition, our verification technique supports member interposition. Member interposition is orthogonal to selective ownership and can be applied, if desired, with or without selective ownership. For example, in Section 7.1.2 on page 193, we show two version of the Composite pattern where the first version combines both member interposition and selective ownership and the second version only uses member interposition. Similarly to
the ownership technique, member interposition mitigates the adverse effect of aliases to
shared state, but in a less restrictive way. As opposed to the ownership technique, mem-
ber interposition does not prevent an instance from participating in other relationships but
only prevents the interposed field from being accessible outside the relationship. Mem-
ber interposition entails further a slightly different semantics in terms of proof obliga-
tions: whereas ownership allows the declaration of an invariant-compromising method
in an owned object in principle, member interposition prevents the declaration of such a
method in the declaring relationship.

Remaining visible-state verification techniques. Lu et al. [110] present a verifica-
tion technique based on their language Oval to facilitate the verification of multi-object
invariants. Like the ownership technique [12, 16], Lu et al.’s technique also uses own-
ership to support modular reasoning about multi-object invariants. Unlike the ownership
technique, Oval is based on a variant of ownership types [93, 94, 95, 97] that enforces
an owner-as-modifier discipline. To cope with call-backs that may potentially arise from
owned objects, Oval employs the notion of a “validity contract”. Such a contract is de-
clared by each method of a class and indicates the expected and vulnerable invariants for
that a method. Method invocations are then constrained to adhere to the “validity subcon-
tract rule” [110]. This rule ensures that the caller guarantees the invariants expected by
the callee and that the invariants vulnerable to the callee are also vulnerable to the caller.
Validity contracts provide some flexibility in terms of allowed method invocations, but
at the cost of increased specification burden for the programmer. Drossopoulou et al.
provide a comparison of the ownership technique and Lu et al.’s technique in [104].

Müller et al. [16] introduce the visibility technique, a visible-state verification technique
that complements the ownership technique [12, 16] with visibility-based invariants. A
visibility-based invariant is allowed to depend on fields of peer objects provided that
those fields are visible to the declaring class and vice versa. The visibility technique also
relaxes object encapsulation by allowing peer objects to assign to each others’ fields. As
a result, the visibility technique is capable of accommodating multi-object invariants over
non-hierarchical object structures. Like the ownership technique, the visibility technique
imposes modular (with regard to a class’ visibility scope) proof obligations. However,
the gain in expressiveness comes at the price of an increased number of proof obligations.
Furthermore, the requirement for mutual visibility rules out invariants that are based on
arrays or library classes.

Summers et al. [105] extend the visibility technique [16] with static invariants (i.e., per-
class invariants). To support static invariants, the authors extend the Universe Type heap
topology with multiple trees. Each tree is rooted in class that becomes the owner of its
“representation objects”. Static invariants are allowed to depend not only on the fields
of their owned objects but also to quantify over all instances of the class. The authors
present a basic version of their technique (visibility technique with statics (VTS)) that
relies on an effect system to prevent dangerous call-backs between multiple trees through
static method invocations. The technique introduces the proof obligation of invariant
preservation for static invariants, which requires a method to show that it does not break the invariant and is similar to our proof obligation (see Definition 5.11 on page 107). As discussed in Section 5.2, we adopt this proof obligation for extent invariants and element invariants of malign relationships. Summers et al. further introduce two more permissive versions of VTS, strong VTS and layered VTS, which allow for certain call-backs between trees and for a reduction of the number of effect annotations, respectively.

In addition to the previously discussed, modular visible-state verification techniques, a number of non-modular techniques have been suggested:

Poetzsch-Heffter [10] introduces a verification technique for object invariants that soundly deals with multi-object invariants and call-backs. His technique neither restricts invariants nor field assignments and method invocations, yet comes at the price of extremely strong proof obligations. In particular, all invariants must be shown to hold in pre-states of method invocations and in final states of method executions. Those proof obligations in turn guarantee that all invariants hold in visible states.

Huizing and Kuiper [11] introduce a slightly less permissive but less costly verification technique that restricts field assignments to the current receiver instance and reduces the number of proof obligations. The latter is achieved by a syntactic analysis that determines the set of invariants that are invalidated by field updates.

Techniques with a relaxed visible-state semantics. More recently, two verification techniques have been suggested that employ a relaxed visible-state semantics to accommodate multi-object invariants over non-hierarchical object structures:

Middelkoop et al. [18] present a verification technique that relies on a refined form of data type induction. This refined form supports update patterns that span nested method executions by allowing certain methods to be executed in states where certain invariants are broken. To delimit the methods and invariants for which no visible-state semantics should be assumed, the authors introduce two special specification constructs “inc” and “coop”. The inc and coop constructs denote, for a method and field, respectively, the set of invariants that the method preserves but does not expect and the set of invariants that may be broken due to assignments to the field, respectively.

Summers and Drossopoulou [19] extend Middelkoop et al.’s work [18] and introduce Considerate Reasoning, a verification technique that allows distinguished invariants to be broken in the initial states of method executions, provided that the methods re-establish the invariant in the final state. Summers and Drossopoulou refine Middelkoop et al.’s coop set to concerns descriptions that are bounded by supporting invariants. Furthermore, the authors provide the encoding of their technique in the Boogie intermediate verification language [112], facilitating the automatic verification of their running example.
Boogie methodology

The Boogie methodology describes a verification technique [13] for the Spec7 programming system [85] that allows the modular verification of Spec7 programs. As opposed to the verification techniques discussed in the previous sections, the Boogie methodology does not employ a visible-state semantics. Instead, programmers are required to delimit the code blocks during which an object supposedly falsifies its invariant. Spec7 provides the block statement `expose` for that purpose, and programmers can only modify an object by exposing the object beforehand. Using an explicit specification of when an object is expected to satisfy its invariant avoids the possible unsoundness with regard to callbacks that visible-state verification techniques typically face.

Various extensions to the Boogie methodology have been introduced that allow the expression of multi-object invariants. Leino and Müller [14] incorporate Universe-type-based ownership [12, 96] into the Boogie methodology and contribute a dynamic ownership model that allows for ownership transfer. Furthermore, the authors describe visibility-based invariants to accommodate multi-object invariants over non-hierarchical object structures. The idea of enlarging an invariant’s scope of visibility has been taken further by Barnett and Naumann [15] and Leino and Schulte [17]. Both techniques extend the Boogie methodology to facilitate the verification of Observer-like patterns (see discussion in Section 7.1.3).
In this chapter, we illustrate the concepts introduced in the previous chapters on a number of examples. All examples employ Design-by-Contract-style assertions, including invariants. We show that those specifications are admissible by our verification technique and discuss the proof obligations that our verification technique generates for the verification of those specifications. We first provide the evaluation of this thesis work based on the examples (Section 7.1) and then conclude with a discussion of open challenges and possible directions for future work (Section 7.2).

### 7.1 Addressed challenges

In this section, we demonstrate the Rumer programming language and our verification technique on a number of examples.

#### 7.1.1 University example

The university example introduced earlier (see Section 2.1.1 on page 8 and Figure 3.3 on page 43) provides ample opportunities for the specification of invariants and routine preconditions and postconditions. We consider, in turn, element and extent invariants both for entities and relationships as well as an ownership-based application invariant.

Figure 7.1 displays the declaration of entity `Student` augmented with an element invariant (line 22) and an extent invariant (line 23). The element invariant requires a student’s `id` to be a positive integer and the extent invariant requires a student’s `id` to uniquely identify a `Student` element instance in its extent instance. Both the element invariant and the extent invariant are admissible according to the basic verification technique (see Table 4.4 on page 82) since they only depend on locations of the invariants’ instances. Entity `Student` declares the mold initializer `initialize()` (see Section 3.4.1 on page 65), which returns a `Student` mold instance whose fields are initialized with the arguments passed to the initializer. Even though mold constructors and mold initializers do not obey a visible-state semantics, `initialize()` declares preconditions and postconditions. These preconditions and postconditions are devised so that `initialize()`
7 Evaluation

```java
entity Student {
    string name;
    int id;
    string language;

    init initialize(string name, int id, string language) // mold initializer
        requires
            id > 0;
        ensures
            this.name == name & this.id == id & this.language == language;
    }

extent Student createStudent(string name, int id, string language)
    requires
        id > 0 &
        !(id isItemOf these.id);
    ensures
        result.name == name & result.id == id & result.language == language &
        these == old(these) union Set(result);
    return these.add(new Student().initialize(name, id, language));
    }

invariant this.id > 0; // element invariant
extent invariantforall(s isElementOf these.id): // extent invariant
    these.select(other: other.id == s.id).count() == 1); // id is unique
}

application University {
    Extent<Student> students = new Extent<Student>();

    main() {
        if (!(1 isItemOf students.id)) {
            students.createStudent("Susan", 1, "French");
        }
    }
}
```

**Figure 7.1:** Entity Student of university program shown in Figure 3.3 on page 43 augmented with an element invariant, extent invariant, and routine preconditions and postconditions.

can meet the `add()` operator’s precondition. As detailed by Table 3.17 on page 68, an add() operator requires that the fields of the mold instance passed as argument satisfy the restrictions imposed by an element invariant on the corresponding fields of an element instance.

Entity Student declares the extent method `createStudent()`. This method must obey a visible-state semantics, and, according to Table 6.13 on page 167, the method can expect the following invariants to hold in its visible states (parameter X): the invariants of all instances sx of type Extent<Element<Student>> (including the current receiver instance these) as well as the invariants of all instances s of type Element<Student> comprised in those instances sx. In addition, method `createStudent()` can expect the extent and element invariants of all entity and relationship types of which Student is not a direct or transitive participant. These types encompass the entities Course and Faculty as well as the relationship Teaches. The invariants vulnerable to the execution of the extent method `createStudent()` (parameter V) are, according to Table 6.13, the invariant
Figure 7.2: Relationship Teaches of university program shown in Figure 3.3 on page 43 augmented with an extent invariant and method preconditions and postconditions.

of the current receiver instance these, the invariants of all element instances comprised in these, and the invariant of the owner of these. Should the ownership be inclusive, then System Invariant 6.3 on page 142 guarantees that both the extent instance and its element instances have the same owner. The proof obligation $B$ is empty for extent method createStudent() since the method does not invoke any routines\(^1\). In the final state of its execution, the extent method createStudent() has to prove that the invariant of its current receiver instance these as well as the invariants of all element instances comprised in these hold. Since the method is asserted that those invariants hold in the method’s initial state and, given the preconditions of createStudent() and the postcondition of the built-in add() operator (see Table 3.17 on page 68), the method should be in the position to show that those invariants also hold in the method’s final state. Furthermore, by relying on the postcondition of the mold initializer initialize() and the built-in add() operator, the extent method should be in the position to guarantee its postcondition.

Figure 7.1 also displays an excerpt of the application declaration University. In its main() action, the application invokes the extent method createStudent() on the Student extent instance created upon start-up (line 28), provided that no Student element instance with the id 1 exists in that extent instance. According to Table 5.5 on page 97, the main() action can expect the invariant of the University application singleton instance as well as all extent and element invariants of all types declared by the university program\(^2\). These types encompass the entities Student, Course and Faculty as well as the relationships Attends, Assists, and Teaches. As the University application does not declare an invariant in Figure 7.1, the proof obligations $B$ and $E$ are empty for the main() action.

Figure 7.2 displays the declaration of relationship Teaches augmented with an extent invariant (line 11). The invariant requires that the inverse of the relation described by the invariant’s Teaches extent instance forms a partial function. The invariant thus

---

\(^1\)Our verification technique treats invocations of the add() and remove() operator as statements (see Section 4.3 on page 78).

\(^2\)The parameters $X$, $V$, $B$, and $E$ for application actions are the same for BVT and EVT.
guarantees that a course can be taught by at most one faculty member, satisfying the UML multiplicity constraint imposed on association teaches in Figure 2.1 on page 8. This invariant is admissible according to the basic verification technique (see Table 4.4 on page 82) since it only depends on locations of the invariant’s extent instance.

Teaches further declares the extent method makeFacultyTeachCourse(). This method creates a new Teaches element instance that relates the Faculty and Course element instances provided as argument to the extent method. According to Table 6.13 on page 167, the extent method makeFacultyTeachCourse() can expect the following invariants to hold in its visible states (parameter X): the invariants of all instances tx of type ExtE{Element(\{Teaches\})} (including the current receiver instance these) as well as the invariants of all instances t of type Element(\{Teaches\}) comprised in those instances tx. In addition, method makeFacultyTeachCourse() can expect the extent and element invariants of all entity and relationship types of which Teaches is not a direct or transitive participant. These types encompass the entities Student, Course, and Faculty as well as the relationship Attends and Assists. The invariants vulnerable to the execution of the extent method createStudent() (parameter V) are, according to Table 6.13, the invariant of the current receiver instance these, the invariants of all element instances comprised in these, and the invariant of the owner of these. The proof obligation B is empty for extent method makeFacultyTeachCourse() as the method does not invoke any routines. In the final state of its execution, the extent method makeFacultyTeachCourse() has to prove that the invariant of its current receiver instance these as well as the invariants of all element instances comprised in these hold. Given the assertion that those invariants hold in the initial state of method makeFacultyTeachCourse() and given the precondition that the Course element instance referred to by the argument c is not yet related by a Teaches element instance residing in these (line 6), method makeFacultyTeachCourse() should be able to show that those invariants also hold in its final state.

Figure 7.3 shows the declaration of relationship Attends. The relationship declares the non-interposed element field grade, which the element invariant on line 19 restricts to range between 1 and 6. As the invariant only depends on locations of the invariant’s element instance, it is admissible according to the basic verification technique (see Table 4.4 on page 82).

The element method setGrade() updates the non-interposed element field grade. Relationship Attends is an instance of a free relationship (see Table 5.4 on page 96) since it neither declares an interposed element field nor imposes an element invariant on such a field. The framework parameters for method setGrade() are thus defined by Table 6.14 on page 167. According to Table 6.14, the element method setGrade() can expect the invariant of the current receiver instance this in its visible states (parameter X) as well as the extent and element invariants of all entity and relationship types of which Attends is not a direct or transitive participant. These types encompass the entities Student, Course, and Faculty as well as the relationships Assists and
7.1 Addressed Challenges

```plaintext
relationship Attends participants (Student learner, Course course) {
  int grade;

  void setGrade(int grade)
  requires
    1 <= grade & grade <= 6;
  ensures
    this.grade == grade;
  { this.grade = grade; }

  extent void registerStudentForCourse(
    query Set<Student> sts, query Set<Course> cs) // query method arguments
  requires
    ((sts cartesianProduct cs) intersection these).isEmpty();
  ensures
    sts cartesianProduct cs isSubsetOf these;
  { these.add(new Attends(sts, cs)); }

  invariant 1 <= this.grade & this.grade <= 6; // element invariant
}

application University {
  Extent<Student> students = new Extent<Student>();
  Extent<Course> courses = new Extent<Course>();
  Extent<Attends> attends = new Extent<Attends>();

  main() {
    ...
    let csStudents be students.select(s: s.id < 1000);
    let csCourses be courses difference courses.select(c: c.title == "Art");
    attends.registerStudentForCourse(csStudents, csCourses);
  }
}
```

Figure 7.3: Relationship Attends of university program shown in Figure 3.3 on page 43 augmented with an element invariant and method preconditions and postconditions.

Teaches. The invariants that are vulnerable to the execution of the element method setGrade() (parameter V) are the invariant of the current receiver instance this, the invariant of the extent instance in which the current receiver instance resides, and the invariant of the owner of the current receiver instance. The proof obligation B is empty for the element method setGrade() as the method does not invoke any routines. In the final state of its execution, the element method setGrade() has to prove that the invariant of its current receiver instance this holds and that it preserves the invariant of the extent instance in which its current receiver instance resides. The latter is empty and, given the assertion that the invariant of setGrade()’s current receiver instance holds in the initial state and given setGrade()’s precondition, setGrade() should be able to show that the invariant of its current receiver instance holds also in the final state.

Relationship Attends declares the extent method registerStudentForCourse() to populate the current extent receiver instance with Attends relationship instances. The framework parameters are analogous to the framework parameters of the extent method makeFacultyTeachCourse() of relationship Teaches (see Figure 7.2). The arguments of the extent method registerStudentForCourse() are notewor-
Figure 7.4: Application University of university program shown in Figure 3.3 on page 43 augmented with ownership-based invariants and action preconditions and postconditions.

thy. The method takes query expressions (see Section 3.2.3 on page 49) as arguments, whose result sets are stored upon relationship mold instance creation. As indicated by Table 3.16 on page 67, an Attends mold instance is created for every element in the cross product of the two argument sets. The resulting bag of Attends mold instances is passed to the add() operator, which creates an Attends relationship element instance for each mold instance in the argument bag (see Table 3.18 on page 69). Figure 7.3 shows also an excerpt of the application declaration University, which invokes registerStudentForCourse() on line 31 and passes as arguments the predicate references declared on line 29 and line 30.

As a last illustration, we extend the University application with ownership-based invariants to accommodate inter-relationship invariants. Figure 7.4 shows the resulting
application declaration. The invariants on line 38 and 39 guarantee, for the university’s extent instances, that students are enrolled in at least one course and that students cannot attend the same courses that they assist, respectively. Both invariants are admissible according to the extended verification technique (see Table 6.9 on page 164). As the University application owns the extent instances students, attends, and assists, the invariants are allowed to refer to the content of those extent instances (see Table 6.10 on page 165).

In addition to the mandatory main() action, the University application declares the actions enroll() and assignTa(). According to Table 5.5 on page 97, those actions can expect the invariants of the University application singleton instance as well as all extent and element invariants of all types declared by the university program. These types encompass the entities Student, Course and Faculty as well as the relationships Attends, Assists, and Teaches. The application invariants declared on line 38 and 39 are vulnerable (parameter $V$) to the execution of all those actions. These are also the invariants that have to be proven to hold before another action is invoked on the University application singleton instance (parameter $B$) and in the final state of an action execution (parameter $E$). We review those proof obligations for each action declaration in Figure 7.4.

The action assignTa() creates a new Assists element instance that relates the Student and Course element instances provided as arguments. For its implementation, it relies on Assists’s extent method assignTaToCourse() (see specification of assignTaToCourse() in Figure 7.5). The invocation of assignTaToCourse() on line 35 is ownership-admissible since the singleton application instance is the owner of the extent instance assists. Since the action assignTa() does not invoke any actions during its execution, the proof obligation $B$ is empty. In the final state of its execution, action assignTa() has to prove that the University application invariants declared on line 38 and 39 hold. To establish those invariants, assignTa() requires as a precondition that the argument student-course pair is not yet related by any Attends element instance contained in attends. Given this precondition and the postcondition of method assignTaToCourse(), the action assignTa() is guaranteed not to break the invariant declared on line 39. By relying on the assertion that the application invariants hold in the action’s initial state, action assignTa() should be able to prove that those invariants hold also in its final state.

The action enroll() creates a new Student element instance as well as a new Attends element instance that relates the newly created Student element instance to the Course element instance with the title passed as argument. For its implementation, action enroll() relies on Student’s extent method createStudent() (see Figure 7.1) as well as on Attends’s extent method registerStudentForCourse() (see Figure 7.3). Both invocations of these methods are ownership-admissible since

---

3Should the course title not be unique, then corresponding Attends relationship element instances are created for each Course element instance with a matching title.
the singleton application instance is the owner of the extent instances students and assists. The proof obligation $B$ is empty for action enroll() as the action does not invoke any actions during its execution. During its execution, the action enroll() may break University’s invariants. The action does in fact break the invariant declared on line 38 by invoking the extent method createStudent() on line 23. After the invocation of that method, there exists a Student element instance in the Student extent instance students that is not related to a Course element instance by the Attends extent instance attends. To re-establish the broken invariant, enroll() invokes the extent method registerStudentForCourse() on the extent instance attends to enroll the newly created student to the Course element instance with the title passed as argument. Given the assertion that the application invariants hold in the action’s initial state, the action enroll() should be in the position to prove that the application invariants also hold in its final state.

The reviewed examples also illustrate that our verification technique imposes modular
### 7.1 Addressed Challenges

1. `class Component {
   
   protected Composite parent;
   
   protected int total = 0;
}

2. `class Composite extends Component {

   private Collection<Component> children;

   public Composite() {
      children = new Vector<Component>();
   }

   public void addComponent(Component c) {
      children.add(c);
      c.parent = this;
      addToTotal(c.total + 1);
   }

   private void addToTotal(int incr) {
      total = total + incr;
      if (parent != null) {
         parent.addToTotal(incr);
      }
   }
}

Figure 7.6: Object-oriented implementation (w/o contracts) of the Composite pattern in a Java-like language as suggested in [87].

7.1.2 Composite pattern

In this section, we provide the full specification of the Composite pattern program introduced earlier (see Section 3.2.2 on page 44 as well as Figure 3.5 on page 45 and Figure 3.11 on page 57). The Composite pattern has been suggested recently as a verification challenge [87, 19] and served as the “Challenge Problem” for the 7th International Workshop on Specification and Verification of Component-Based Systems (SAVCBS).

Figure 7.6 shows an object-oriented implementation of the Composite pattern as suggested in [87]. In accordance with the UML class diagram shown in Figure 3.4 on page 45, the implementation distinguishes the classes `Component` and `Composite` and represents the UML aggregation by means of a `parent` reference and a `children` collection in `Component` and `Composite`, respectively. The implementation further establishes a field `total` (line 3) which indicates the total number of children components that can be reached from a component. The SAVCBS challenge problem stipulates the invariant that the value of a component object’s `total` field must be equal to the number of children components contained within the sub-tree rooted at the component object. This invariant is an instance of a multi-object invariant since it is violated.
by any addition or removal of a component to or from a composite’s sub-tree. Method 
addComponent() accounts for this violation and triggers a bottom-up traversal of the 
composite tree to update the total field of a composite and of all its parent compos-
ites. The actual update is achieved by the recursive method addToTotal(). Once this 
method terminates, the invariant of the composite on which method addComponent() 
is invoked as well as the invariants of all its transitive parent composites are re-established. 
However, for the duration of the recursive invocations of method addToTotal(), those 
invariants are broken. Since these invocations (re-)enter inconsistent objects, method 
addToTotal() cannot assume that the invariant of its current receiver object holds in 
the initial state of the method.

Figure 7.7 and Figure 7.8 give the complete specification of the Composite pattern in 
Rumer. The specification captures not only the SAVCBS invariant regarding a compos-
ite’s total field (invariant on line 26 in Figure 7.7) but also provides a precise definition 
of a composite’s tree properties. As detailed in Section 3.2.5 on page 55, the first two 
conjuncts of Parent’s extent invariant (line 24 in Figure 7.7) guarantee that the re-
lation described by a Parent extent instance forms a forest of trees. Composite’s 
element invariant (line 54 in Figure 7.8) then restricts a Composite element instance’s 
tree Parent extent instance from a forest of trees to a tree. Parent’s extent invariant 
is admissible according to the basic verification technique (see Table 4.4 on page 82). 
It only depends on the content of the invariant’s Parent extent instance as well as on 
the interposed fields total of the element instances residing in that extent instance. 
Composite’s element invariant, on the other hand, is admissible according to the ex-
tended verification technique (see Table 6.9 on page 164). As detailed in Section 6.3.1 
on page 164, a Composite element instance is the owner of its related Parent extent 
instance, and, hence, the Composite element invariant is allowed to depend not only 
on its instance’s locations but also on the owned Parent extent instance’s locations.

The extent method append() of relationship Parent (line 4 in Figure 7.7) appends 
the argument component c as child of the argument component p. The method instan-
tiates a Parent element instance that relates the components c and p by adding a new 
Parent mold instance to the current extent receiver instance (line 15). The loop on 
line 17 increments the total field of all transitive parent components of the child com-
ponent c. According to Table 6.13 on page 167, the method can expect the following 
invariants to hold in its visible states (parameter X): the invariants of all instances px of 
type Extent<Element<Parent>> (including the current receiver instance these) as well as 
the invariants of all instances p of type Element<Parent> comprised in those instances px. 
In addition, method append() can expect the extent and element invariants of all entity 
and relationship types of which Parent is not a direct or transitive participant. These 
types encompass the entity Component. Since the extent method append() expects 
the invariant of its current receiver instance, the update of the total field of all affected 
parent components must actually happen in a loop, as opposed to a recursive invocation. 
The invariants vulnerable to the execution of the extent method append() (parameter 
∀) are, according to Table 6.13, the invariant of the current receiver instance these, the
relationship Parent participants (Component child, Component parent) {
  int >parent total;

  extent void append(Component c, Component p)
  requires
    c != null & p != null & c != p &
    !(c isElementOf these.child union these.parent) &
    (!these.isEmpty() => p isElementOf these.child union these.parent);
  ensures
    these == old(these) union Set(Pair(c, p)) &
    forall(x isElementOf
      these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.child == c).parent:
      x.total == old(x.total) + 1);
  {
    these.add(new Parent(c, p));
    // increments total of all transitive parents of c
    foreach (x isElementOf
      these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.child == c).parent)
      { x.total = x.total + 1; }
  }

  extent invariant
  // these is a forest of trees
  these.isPartialFunction() & these.transitiveClosure().isIrreflexive() &
  // SAVCBS challenge invariant
  forall(p isElementOf these.parent:
    p.total == these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.parent == p).count());
}

Figure 7.7: Complete Rumer Composite pattern specification for Parent relationship.

invariants of all element instances comprised in these, and the invariant of the owner of these. Since relationship Parent does not declare an element invariant, only the extent invariant declared on line 22 in Figure 7.7 and the invariant of the current receiver instance’s owner are vulnerable to the execution of the extent method append(). The proof obligation is empty for extent method append() as the method does not invoke any routines. In the final state of its execution, the extent method append() has to prove that the invariant of its current receiver instance these as well as the invariants of all element instances comprised in these hold. The latter is empty, and given the assertion that the extent invariant holds in the initial state and given the precondition of append() as well as the fact that append() updates the total field of all transitive parent components of the child component c, the extent method append() should be able to show that its current receiver’s invariant also holds in the final state.

The extent method createComposite() of relationship Composite (line 4 in Figure 7.8) instantiates a Composite element instance by adding a new Composite mold instance to the current extent receiver instance of the method. The new Composite element instance has the component c as a root participant and an empty Parent extent instance as a tree participant. As discussed in Section 6.2.2 on page 141, the newly created Composite element instance is the owner of its tree Parent extent instance. The framework parameters for the extent method createComposite() are defined by Table 6.13 on page 167 and, thus, they are analogous to the parameters of
relationship Composite
participants (Component root, owned Extent<Parent> tree) {

extent Composite createComposite(Component c)
requires c != null;
ensures 
result.root == c & result.tree.isEmpty() &
these == old(these) union Set(result);
{ return these.add(new Composite(c, new owned Extent<Parent>())); }

void appendComposite(Composite c, Component p)
requires 
c != null & p != null & c.root != p &
!(c.root isElementOf this.tree.child union this.tree.parent) &
(!this.tree isEmpty() => p isElementOf this.tree.child union this.tree.parent) &
(this.tree.isEmpty() => p == this.root) &
((this.tree.child union this.tree.parent) intersection
(c.tree.child union c.tree.parent)).isEmpty();
ensures 
this.tree == old(this.tree) union Set(Pair(c.root, p)) union c.tree;
{ this.appendComponent(c.root, p); this.appendSubComposite(c.tree, c.root); }

void appendComponent(Component c, Component p)
requires 
c != null & p != null & c != p &
!(c isElementOf this.tree.child union this.tree.parent) &
(!this.tree.isEmpty() => p isElementOf this.tree.child union this.tree.parent) &
(this.tree.isEmpty() => this.root == p);
ensures 
this.tree == old(this.tree) union Set(Pair(c, p));
{ this.tree.append(c, p); }

void appendSubComposite(query Set<Parent> c, Component p)
requires 
p != null &
!(p isElementOf c.child) &
!(c.isEmpty() => p isElementOf c.parent) &
(c.child == c.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.parent == p).child) &
(c.child intersection
(this.tree.child union this.tree.parent)).isEmpty() &
(!this.tree.isEmpty() => p isElementOf this.tree.child union this.tree.parent) &
(this.tree.isEmpty() => this.root == p);
ensures 
this.tree == old(this.tree) union c;
{ foreach (cp isElementOf c.select(x: x.parent == p)) {
 this.appendComponent(cp.child, cp.parent);
 this.appendSubComposite(c.select(x: x.child isElementOf
 c.transitiveClosure().select(y: y.parent == cp.child).child), cp.child);
} }

invariant // this.tree is a tree with the root this.root
!(this.root isElementOf this.tree.child) &
(!this.tree.isEmpty() => this.root isElementOf this.tree.parent) &
this.tree.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.parent == this.root).child ==
this.tree.child;
}

Figure 7.8: Complete Rumer Composite pattern specification for Composite relationship.
Parent’s extent method append(), detailed previously. Unlike append(), however, createComposite() can expect not only the element and extent invariants of its declaring type Composite but also the element and extent invariants of relationship Parent and entity Component.

The element method appendComposite() (line 11 in Figure 7.8) appends the composite $c$ to the current receiver instance as a child of component $p$. The method thus allows a programmer to extend a composite at any point in its tree. The method first invokes the element method appendComponent() on its current receiver instance to append the root component of composite $c$ to the current receiver instance’s tree extent instance as a child of $p$. Then, it invokes the element method appendSubComposite() on the current receiver instance to append the sub-composite rooted at $c$’s root component as a child of the previously inserted root component. The framework parameters for the element method appendComposite() are defined by Table 6.14 on page 167. Since relationship Composite neither declares an interposed element field nor imposes an element invariant on such a field, it is an instance of a free relationship (see Section 5.2 on page 91 and Table 5.4 on page 96). Method appendComposite() can hence expect (parameter $X$) the invariant of its current Composite element receiver instance in its visible states as well as the element and extent invariants of relationship Parent and entity Component. The invariants vulnerable to the execution of method appendComposite() (parameter $V$) are the invariant of the current receiver instance this, the invariant of the extent instance in which the current receiver instance resides, and the invariant of the owner of the current receiver instance. Since Composite does not declare an extent invariant, the invariant of the extent instance in which the current receiver instance resides is not vulnerable to the execution of appendComposite(). For both method invocations, the invariant of the current receiver instance this has to be shown to hold before the call (parameter $B$). Those proof obligations should be easily met since the invariant of the current receiver instance is asserted to hold in the visible states of Composite’s element methods. Analogously, it should be straightforward to show that the invariant of the current receiver instance holds in the final state of the element method appendComposite() (parameter $E$).

The element method appendComponent() (line 24 in Figure 7.8) invokes the extent method append() with the argument components $c$ and $p$ on the current receiver instance’s tree extent instance. The invocation is ownership-admissible since the current receiver instance is the owner of its tree extent instance. As a result, the component $c$ is appended as a child of the component $p$ in the composite’s tree extent instance. The element method appendComponent() has the same set of invariants $X$ and $V$ as the element method appendComposite(). The proof obligation $B$ is empty for appendComponent() since the receiver instance this.tree of the method invocation on line 33 is different from the current receiver instance. Based on the assertion that the current receiver instance’s invariant holds in the initial state and given the precondition of appendComponent() as well as the postcondition of append(), method appendComponent() should be able to show that its current receiver instance’s in-
variant also holds in the final state.

The element method `appendSubComposite()` (line 35 in Figure 7.8) appends the sub-composite denoted by the query expression `c` to the current receiver instance’s tree extent instance as a child of component `p`. The method is implemented recursively to append the sub-composite in a depth-first traversal order. In each recursive invocation, one child component of the sub-composite is appended to its corresponding parent component in the current receiver instance’s tree extent instance. Recursion stops whenever the sub-composite `c` denotes the empty set. This is the case whenever a leaf component has been inserted in the preceding recursive invocation. Method `appendSubComposite()` has the same set of invariants `X` and `V` as the methods `appendComposite()` and `appendComponent()`. For both method invocations on line 49 and on line 50, the invariant of the current receiver instance `this` has to be shown to hold before the call (parameter `B`). For the invocation on line 49, the invariant is asserted to hold for the first loop iteration and guaranteed to be established by `appendSubComposite()` for the remaining loop iterations. For the invocation on line 50, the invariant is guaranteed to be established by the previous statement and thus to hold in the pre-state of the invocation. Given the preconditions on line 38–40 (guarantee that `c` is empty or a tree with the root `p`) as well as the precondition on line 41–42 (prevents cycles with regard to these’s tree extent instance), `appendSubComposite()` should be able to show that the invariant of its current receiver instance holds in the final state (parameter `E`).

The specification of the Composite pattern in Rumer shown in Figure 7.7 and Figure 7.8 demonstrates that the SAVCBS challenge invariant can be encapsulated in a relationship invariant using member interposition and verified employing our basic, visible-state verification technique presented in Chapter 5. The example also demonstrates that the Rumer specification is able to succinctly express the tree properties of the Composite pattern. To specify and verify the invariant of relationship `Composite`, which guarantees that a composite’s tree extent instance forms indeed a tree and not a forest, selective ownership is required. Thus, a composite’s tree invariant can be verified using our extended, visible-state verification technique presented in Chapter 6.

The ownership restriction necessary to verify the tree invariant of the Composite pattern shown in Figure 7.7 and Figure 7.8 is minimal. It only encompasses a composite’s tree `Parent` extent instance, but not the `Parent` element instances comprised in that extent instance, nor the `Component` element instances related by those `Parent` element instances. If this form of ownership is still too restrictive, an alternative specification of the Composite pattern is conceivable. Figure 7.9 shows the alternative specification of the Composite pattern in Rumer. This specification represents a composite by a `Composite extent` instance and not, as the previous specification, by a `Composite element` instance. Such a `Composite extent` instance keeps a reference to its root component (extent field `root` declared on line 2), and the special case of a composite existing only of a root component is represented by an empty `Composite extent` instance. Since this alternative specification does not introduce an indirection as the specification shown Figure 7.7
7.1 ADDRESSED CHALLENGES

relationship Composite participants (Component child, Component parent) {
extent Component root; // denotes root of composite
int >parent total;

Extent<Composite>(Component c)
requires
  c != null;
ensures
  these.root == c & these.isEmpty();
  { these.root = c; }

extent void append(Component c, Component p)
requires/ensures // analogous to append() in Figure 7.7
  { these.add(new Composite(c, p));
    foreach (x isElementOf
      these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.child == c).parent)
      { x.total = x.total + 1; }
  }

extent void appendSubComposite(query Set<Composite> c, Component p)
requires/ensures // analogous to appendSubComposite() in Figure 7.8
  { foreach (cp isElementOf c.select(x: x.parent == p)) {
      these.appendComponent(cp.child, cp.parent);
      these.appendSubComposite(c.select(x: x.child isElementOf
        c.transitiveClosure().select(y: y.parent == cp.child).child), cp.child);
    }
  }

extent void appendComposite(Extent<Composite> c, Component p)
requires/ensures // analogous to appendComposite() in Figure 7.8
  { these.appendComponent(c.root, p);
    these.appendSubComposite(c, c.root);
  }

extent invariant
  these.isPartialFunction() & these.transitiveClosure().isIrreflexive() &
  !(these.root isElementOf these.child) &
  (!these.isEmpty() => these.root isElementOf these.parent) &
  these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.parent == these.root).child ==
  these.child &
  forAll(p isElementOf these.parent:
    p.total == these.transitiveClosure().select(cp: cp.parent == p).count());
}

Figure 7.9: Alternative Rumer Composite pattern specification. As opposed to the specification in Figure 7.7 and Figure 7.8, which represents a composite by a Composite element instance, this specification represents a composite by a Composite extent instance.

and Figure 7.8, it can fully encapsulate the tree invariant (line 38). As a result, the tree invariant can be specified without ownership. However, representing a composite by an extent instance rather than an element instance has a number of consequences. Unlike element instances, extent instances cannot be retrieved from the program heap using query expressions as there is no “meta extent” for extent instances. Furthermore, it needs to be reconsidered how element type fields, such as the extent field root, should be imple-
mented in the compiler. As briefly mentioned in Section 4.4 on page 86, element type variables or fields are implemented as weak references to facilitate the destruction of the referred-to element instances through removal operations. The case at hand, however, suggests that element type fields of extent instances should be implemented as strong references to guarantee that the referred-to element instance exists at least as long as it is referred-to by the extent instance. A detailed consideration of this issue and an evaluation of whether the specification suggested in Figure 7.9 represents a faithful Rumer specification of the Composite pattern remains as future work (see also discussion in Section 7.2).

The Composite pattern specifications shown in Figure 7.7 and Figure 7.8 as well as in Figure 7.9 all use a field to store the number of transitive children of a composite. This choice is in line with the SAVCBS challenge problem and also in line with the prevailing programming practice. However, a more Rumer-way of implementing the number of a composite’s transitive children would be to use an interposed element query (see Section 3.2.3) rather than an interposed element field. This choice would avoid the need of incrementing the total field of a component’s transitive parents in method append(), and the SAVCBS challenge problem would not arise in the first place.

A number of proposals have been suggested that address the challenges of verifying the SAVCBS invariant of the Composite pattern in a pure object-oriented setting. Verification techniques based on ownership [12, 14, 16] allow the specification and verification of the Composite pattern by leveraging the heap topology enforced by Universe Types. However, an ownership-based specification of the Composite pattern prevents modifications of a composite’s components by non-owners. Other proposals typically employ a relaxed visible-state semantics for invariants. Summers and Drossopoulou [19] introduce Considerate Reasoning, a verification technique that allows distinguished invariants to be broken in the initial states of method executions, provided that the methods re-establish the invariant in the final state. Furthermore, techniques have been presented that do not employ a visible-state semantics for invariants. Bierhoff and Aldrich [113] leverage type-state-based permissions to verify a simpler invariant than the SAVCBS challenge invariant for binary Composite tree structures and Jacobs et al. [114] leverage separation logic to verify the SAVCBS invariant for binary Composite tree structures.

7.1.3 Synchronized clocks

In this section, we illustrate the Rumer concepts and verification technique on the synchronized clocks example. The synchronized clocks example has been introduced by Barnett and Naumann [15] as an instance of the Observer pattern. Observer-like patterns give typically rise to multi-object invariants that are challenging for verification.

Figure 7.10 shows an object-oriented implementation of the synchronized clocks example as suggested in [15]. The program implements a very simple scheme to synchronize a clock with its associated server clock. According to this scheme, only a server clock can advance its time (method tick() in Figure 7.10(a)), but a client clock can only
7.1 ADDRESSED CHALLENGES

```java
public class ServerClock {
  private int time;
  public ServerClock() {
    this.time = 0;
  }
  public int time() {
    return this.time;
  }
  public void tick(int incr) {
    this.time = this.time + incr;
  }
}
```

```java
public class Clock {
  private int time;
  private ServerClock server;
  public Clock(ServerClock server) {
    this.time = 0;
    this.server = server;
  }
  public int time() {
    return this.time;
  }
  public void sync() {
    this.time = server.time();
  }
}
```

Figure 7.10: Object-oriented implementation (w/o contracts) of synchronized clocks example in a Java-like language, based on [15].

update its time by synchronizing its time with the time of its associated server clock (method `sync()` in Figure 7.10(b)). A client clock thus becomes the “observer” of a server clock’s time field, making the server clock become the “subject”. This simple clock synchronization scheme establishes the invariant that a client clock cannot overtake its server clock. The verification of this invariant is challenging since it represents a multi-object invariant that is stated at the observer-side.

Figure 7.11 shows the specification of the synchronized clocks example as introduced in previous work [101]. The specification consists of the entity declaration `Clock` and the relationship declaration `SyncClocks`. Relationship `SyncClocks` relates a client clock to a server clock and encapsulates the clock synchronization scheme explained earlier. The relationship declares the two interposed element fields `time` (line 4 and 5), the mold initializer `initialize()` (line 7), the interposed element method `tick()` (line 11), the non-interposed element method `sync()` (line 16), and the extent method `createSyncClocks()` (line 20). Relationship `SyncClocks` interposes a time field into each role of the relationship. The mold initializer `initialize()` sets a client clock’s time and a server clock’s time to zero. The element method `tick()` is interposed into a server clock and increments that server clock’s `time` field by the argument value. The non-interposed element method `sync()` sets, for a client clock and its associated server clock, the client clock’s `time` field to the value of the server clock’s `time` field. Relationship `SyncClocks` establishes an element invariant to ascertain the intended synchronization scheme. The element invariant is declared on line 30 and guarantees that a clock’s time is positive and that a client clock’s time is less than or equal to its server clock time. Furthermore, relationship `SyncClocks` establishes an extent invariant to guarantee that a client clock can at most synchronize with one server clock and to prevent a clock from being both a client and a server (line 32 and line 33, resp.).

Both invariants declared by relationship `SyncClocks` are admissible according to the
Figure 7.11: Rumer specification of synchronized clocks example.

element Clock {...}

relationship SyncClocks participants (Clock client, Clock server) {
  int >client time;
  int >server time;

  init initialize()
    ensures client.time == 0 & server.time == 0;
    { client.time = 0; server.time = 0; }

  void >server tick(int incr)
    requires 0 <= incr;
    ensures old(time) == time + incr;
    { time = time + incr; }

  void sync()
    ensures client.time == server.time;
    { client.time = server.time; }

  extent SyncClocks createSyncClocks (Clock clCl, Clock svCl)
    requires clCl != null & svCl != null &
    !(clCl isElementOf these.client) &
    !(clCl isElementOf these.server);
    ensures result.client == clCl & result.server == svCl &
    these == old(these) union Set(result);
    { return these.add(new SyncClocks(clCl, svCl).initialize()); }

  invariant 0 <= client.time & client.time <= server.time;
  extent invariant
    these.isPartialFunction() &
    (these.client intersection these.server).isEmpty();
}

basic verification technique (see Table 4.4 on page 82). We illustrate our verification technique on the interposed element method `tick()` and the non-interposed element method `sync()`. The verification of the extent method `createSyncClocks()` is analogous to the verification of the extent method `makeFacultyTeachCourse()` of the university example in Figure 7.2. Relationship `SyncClocks` is an instance of an A-benign–B-malign relationship (see Section 5.2 on page 91). As illustrated by Table 5.4 on page 96, the relationship is A-benign–B-malign since it declares an element invariant on element fields that are interposed into both roles of the relationship and since it is B-unique. The part of the element invariant that is responsible for `SyncClocks`’s B-malignity is the reference to a server clock’s time. As a server clock’s time is shared among several client clocks, the update of the server clock’s time through a relationship element instance can compromise the invariants of all other relationship element instances that relate client clocks to the same server clock. The reference to a client clock’s time, on the other hand, does not constitute a malign reference. The extent invariant of `SyncClocks` makes the relationship B-unique, guaranteeing that a client clock is related to a server clock by at most one `SyncClocks` element instance.
The framework parameters for the non-interposed element method sync() are defined by Table 6.14 on page 167, conjoined with Table 6.15 on page 167 and Table 6.16 on page 168. The method can expect (parameter $X$) the invariant of its current receiver instance, the element and extent invariants of entity Clock, as well as the $B$-uniqueness assertion of the invariant of the extent instance in which the current receiver instance resides. The invariants vulnerable to the execution of method sync() (parameter $V$) are the invariants of those SyncClocks element instances $S$ that are related to the same server clock as the current receiver instance (including the current receiver instance), the invariant of the SyncClocks extent instance $sx$ in which the current receiver instance resides, and the invariant of the owner of the current receiver instance. The proof obligation $B$ is empty since method sync() does not invoke any methods. The proof obligation $E$ requires method sync() to prove that the invariant of its current receiver instance holds and that it preserves the invariants of all the element instances $S$ (excluding the current receiver instance) as well as the invariant of the extent instance $sx$. Given the assertion that the invariant of the current receiver instance holds in the initial state of method sync(), the method should be able to show that it also holds after the update on line 18. Furthermore, by assuming that the invariants of all the element instances $S$ hold in the initial state of method sync() and since the update on line 18 does not alter the shared server clock’s time, the method should be able to preserve those invariants. Similarly, the method sync() should be able to preserve the extent invariant of the extent instance $sx$ since that invariant does not rely on the updated interposed field.

The framework parameters for the interposed element method tick() are defined by Table 6.17 on page 168. As opposed to the non-interposed element method sync(), the interposed element method tick() can only expect (parameter $X$) the element and extent invariants of entity Clock. The invariants vulnerable to the execution of method tick() (parameter $V$) are the invariants of those SyncClocks element instances $S$ that relate the current receiver instance, the invariant of the SyncClocks extent instance $sx$ in which the element instances $S$ reside, and the invariant of the owner of the current receiver instance. The proof obligation $B$ is vacuous for interposed element methods. The proof obligation $E$ requires method tick() to prove that it preserves the invariants of all the element instances $S$ as well as the invariant of the extent instance $sx$. By assuming that the invariants of all the element instances $S$ hold in the initial state of method tick() and since the update on line 13 does at most advance the shared server clock’s time, the method should be able to preserve those invariants. Similarly, the method tick() should be able to preserve the extent invariant of the extent instance $sx$ since that invariant does not rely on the updated interposed field.

The synchronized clocks example demonstrates that the proof obligation $E$ established for non-interposed and interposed element methods of unilaterally or bilaterally malign relationships prevent such methods from breaking any element invariants that hold in the initial state of the method. Whether a non-interposed or interposed element method of such a relationship is able to preserve an element invariant depends on the particular formulation of the invariant. For example, if the invariant on line 30 required a client
clock’s time to be at most ten ticks behind its server clock’s time, then method `tick()` could not be verified. To produce a verifiable program, a programmer would need to encapsulate the update of a server clock’s time in an extent method. Since an extent method can invoke methods on any instances of the current receiver instance’s element type, it could invoke method `sync()` on all `SyncClocks` element instances that relate the updated server clock and whose client clock’s time would fall below the threshold.

The same reasoning also applies to any element method of an entity or relationship (free, benign, or malign) with regard to the preservation of extent invariants. If an element method is not able to preserve the extent invariant of the extent instance in which the current receiver instance resides, the element method’s body must be encapsulated in a corresponding extent method. For example, the update of a parent component’s `total` field in the Composite pattern program shown in Figure 7.7 and Figure 7.9 is only verifiable if the update occurs in an extent method. Only an extent method can “atomically” write to the `total` fields of all transitive parent components of the newly appended child component and can thus re-establish the broken extent invariant.

The verification of Observer-like patterns in a pure object-oriented setting is challenging. Due to the nature of the pattern, the multi-object invariant is established at the observer-side. Since this side is the many side of the dependency, verification techniques based on `ownership` [12, 14, 16] are not applicable. The only invariant-based techniques that are able to verify Observer-like patterns are the work by Barnett and Naumann [15] on friendship-based invariants and the work by Leino and Schulte [17] on history invariants. The two techniques differ in their applicability and entailed restrictions. Whereas the friendship-based approach requires a granting class (subject) to “know” its friend (observer) classes, the history invariant-based approach drops this restriction. This flexibility comes at the cost of limiting the possible evolution of the subject. In the friendship-based approach, an observer can restrict how a subject can evolve over time by specifying an appropriate update guard. In the history invariant-based approach, on the other hand, the subject is limited to evolve monotonically.

### 7.2 Future work

As demonstrated in the previous section, the current Rumer programming and specification language as well as its verification technique are capable of accommodating a substantial range of programs and verification challenges. Nonetheless, there remain open challenges, pointing us to exciting opportunities for further investigation. We first present opportunities for language development and then opportunities for program verification.

#### 7.2.1 Language development

**Element instance destruction.** Due to the non-strict execution semantics of the Rumer built-in removal operator (see Section 3.4.2 on page 71), the actual point in time when a
to-be destructed element instance is actually destructed can generally not be determined modularly. Only in combination with ownership, is a modular, static determination of the time of destruction possible. In future work, we would like to investigate whether this form of non-modularity is undesirable or even limiting. Our investigations may result in extensions to the Rumer specification language to allow the expression of scheduling constraints for element instance destruction. In addition, further thought has to be given to the discrimination between references and relationship participation. System Invariant 3.7 on page 74 only prevents the destruction of an element instance as long as the element instance (possibly transitively) participates in a relationship element instance. The existence of references to an element instance, however, is ignored by System Invariant 3.7. As briefly mentioned during the discussion of the alternative Composite pattern implementation (see Figure 7.9), this treatment may have to be changed for reference fields of extent instances.

**Query optimizations.** The call-by-name evaluation of predicate references (see Section 3.2.3 on page 49) adds some run-time overhead to the execution of a Rumer program. We foresee the implementation of various strategies to prevent reevaluation of a query expression if the underlying extent instances have not changed since the last evaluation of the query. Both dynamic and static strategies are conceivable. For example, a dynamic strategy could monitor writes to extent instances and invalidate the cached result sets of those query expressions that rely on the changed extent instances. Leveraging the strong encapsulation properties of the Rumer language as well as routine contracts, this idea could also be partially implemented at compile-time. Orthogonally to optimizations targeting the unnecessary reevaluation of query expressions, performance gains for query evaluation can be obtained through parallelization. Since query expressions in Rumer are side-effect free, they can safely be parallelized.

**Pure methods.** An obvious extension to the current Rumer programming language would be the support of pure methods. Pure methods would complement the currently available built-in query operators and would allow programmers to provide their own customized queries. As prior work on the support of pure methods in object-oriented specifications [115, 116, 117, 118] has shown, there are a number of subtleties to consider. Since pure methods can declare preconditions and postconditions like ordinary methods, they may lead to recursive specifications. Furthermore, pure methods are typically axiomatized in the underlying deductive system used for reasoning about specifications. This axiomatization can lead to the accidental introduction of inconsistencies through user-defined preconditions and postconditions. We expect the solutions devised to address these issues in the context of object-oriented specifications to apply likewise to Rumer specifications. In addition, we expect the concept of an extent instance to prove viable in the formulation of well-founded, recursive pure methods.
Sharing of interposed members. Member interposition gives rise to implicit role declarations. Whilst member interposition is lightweight and adequate for many scenarios, it prohibits the sharing of interposed members across several relationship types. In future work, we would like to address this limitation and investigate the addition of explicit roles in the spirit of [61, 64] to the Rumer language. A preliminary investigation has already been carried out by Sebestyén-Pál [80] in her master’s thesis. Those investigations suggest that explicit roles are key to the adaptation and integration of entities and relationships to allow consolidating separately devised Rumer programs.

Program scalability. The scalability of the current Rumer language is limited. The most limiting factor is the application unit of a Rumer program. The current constraint that there exists only one application unit per Rumer program results in the culmination of applied code in the application. To allow Rumer programs to scale in a modular way, we would like to introduce a module system to the Rumer language. Such a module system will allow the encapsulation of a subsystem (“mini-world”) of entity and relationship declarations together with their applied code in an instantiable unit. A preliminary investigation has already been carried out by Conconi [81] in his master’s thesis. The elaborated Rumer module system leverages explicit roles (based on [80]) in combination with type genericity and virtual members and supports visibility modifiers to facilitate information hiding. Case studies (including the implementation of a raytracer) have been executed to assess the new module system. The results indicate that the elaborated module system allows for modular scalability of Rumer programs and at the same time preserves the guarantees made by the Matryoshka Principle.

7.2.2 Program verification

Verification scalability. In future work, we would like to extend our verification technique to support a module system similar to the one elaborated as part of Conconi’s thesis [81]. Our preliminary investigation suggests that a module system can provide program scalability and at the same time preserve those guarantees made by the Matryoshka Principle that are crucial to program verification. Such an effort promises to allow the modular specification and verification of role-based invariants, which constrain the dependencies between various entities and relationships, and thus may constitute an important step towards scaling program verification to real-world software. In addition, we expect a module system to help making those two program well-formedness checks that are currently not modular, modular. These checks guarantee that a program’s participants relation is acyclic (see System Invariant 4.1 on page 77) and that entity and relationship fields do not point to instances of a base type of which the declaring base type is a direct or transitive participant (see Section 6.2.3 on page 146).

(Semi-) automatic verification. The implementation of a static verifier that allows the compile-time verification of Rumer programs based on our verification technique is the
logical next step to take as part of future work. To implement a static verifier for Rumer, we have to \((i)\) choose a prover that we can use as a back-end to our compiler and we have to \((ii)\) axiomatize the semantics of the Rumer language and verification technique in terms of the prover’s deductive system. For the choice of the prover, we favor a whole verification toolchain, such as the Boogie intermediate verification language [112] and verification condition generator. Such a toolchain would take over the task of verification condition generation and shield us from direct interactions with the underlying prover (i.e., the Z3 SMT solver [119] in the case of Boogie). However, given the limited support of set theory by current SMT solvers, we may either have to extend an SMT solver’s mathematical theory with set theory or to consider a theorem prover as a direct back-end. For the axiomatization of the Rumer language and verification technique, we have to give further thought to the expression of frame properties [120]. We hope to leverage a Rumer program’s participants clauses as they implicitly indicate the locations that may potentially change during the execution of a routine. If such an implicit declaration of frame properties is unfeasible, we consider extending the Rumer specification language with explicit modifies clauses in the spirit of [12].
Conclusion

This thesis presents a modular, invariant-based verification technique for our relationship-based programming and specification language Rumer. The verification technique relies on a stratified programming model. This model results from the abstractions underlying the Rumer language. Rumer provides two instantiable language abstractions — the entity and the relationship — to represent objects and the various relationships between them. A relationship declaration indicates the type of instances it relates and accepts both entities and relationships as participants. As a result, relationship declarations naturally stratify the program, giving structure to the heap and preventing cyclic chains of references.

The stratified programming model allows the implementation of a modularization discipline that provides strong encapsulation for Rumer types. The Matryoshka Principle captures this discipline in terms of admissibility criteria that stipulate restrictions on writes to locations, the expression of invariants, and method invocations. These admissibility criteria guarantee that locations are encapsulated by their declaring type, that invariants can only rely on locations that are encapsulated by the invariant-declaring type, and that method invocations cannot lead to transitive call-backs.

Our verification technique leverages the new programming model in multiple ways. It is based on the Matryoshka Principle, which provides modular reasoning about state changes and prevents transitive call-backs. Relying on these guarantees, our verification technique adopts a visible-state semantics for invariants. To facilitate the verification of multi-object invariants, our technique relies on two language mechanisms that can be used separately or combined. The first mechanism is member interposition. It allows the declaration of the properties of a relationship participant that are specific to a relationship and encapsulates those properties in the respective relationship. The second mechanism is selective ownership. It represents a hybrid ownership scheme in which owned and shared instances coexist and facilitates the declaration of ownership-based invariants.

We evaluated our verification technique and the suggested programming model based on a number of well-known program verification problems. The results provide evidence that the suggested verification technique and programming model is capable of addressing those challenge problems. Crucial to the success seems to be the coordinated interplay of the various unique features of the Rumer programming language. For example, the notion
of an extent instance to capture a programmer-defined “universe” of instances proved to be beneficial for expressing and verifying sophisticated invariants. We also performed a preliminary investigation of future extensions to the Rumer language. These extensions allow Rumer programs to scale to real-world-sized programs. The investigation indicates that the properties of the current Rumer system that are crucial to modular verification are scalable too. These insights raise hope that the presented verification technique and programming model can serve as a stepping stone towards scaling program verification to real-world software.
Appendix

In this appendix, we provide the complete grammar of the Rumer programming and specification language.

A.1 Rumer grammar

Below, we list the Rumer grammar in EBNF (Extended Backus-Naur Form) form: curly braces \{ term \} denote zero, one, or more repetitions of \textit{term} and squared brackets \[ term \] denote zero or one repetition of \textit{term}. The grammar conforms to the ANTLR [73] style guidelines and uses lower case initial letters for non-terminals (i.e., parser rules) and upper case initial letters for terminals (i.e., lexer rules).

\begin{verbatim}
program  \{ typeDecl \} applicationDecl \{ typeDecl \}
typeDecl entityDecl | relationshipDecl
entityDecl "entity" Identifier \{ memberDecl \} ""
relationshipDecl "relationship" Identifier participantsDecl \{ memberDecl \} ""
participantsDecl "participants" \{ Identifier "," type Identifier "" \}"
memberDecl fieldDecl | queryDecl | routineDecl | invariantDecl
fieldDecl elementFieldDecl | extentFieldDecl
elementFieldDecl type \[ interpositionDecl \] Identifier \{ "," Identifier \} ";"
interpositionDecl ">" \{ Identifier | "domain" | "range" \}
extentFieldDecl "extent" type Identifier \{ "," Identifier \} ";"
queryDecl elementQueryDecl | extentQueryDecl
elementQueryDecl "let" \[ interpositionDecl \] Identifier "be" predicate ";" |
extentQueryDecl "let" "extent" type \[ interpositionDecl \] Identifier "be" predicate ";"
routineDecl moldInitializerDecl | extentConstructorDecl | methodDecl
moldInitializerDecl "init" routineSignatureTail block
extentConstructorDecl "extent" routineSignatureTail block
methodDecl elementMethodDecl |
\end{verbatim}
extentMethodDecl
  "void" [ interpositionDecl ] routineSignatureTail block |
  type [ interpositionDecl ] routineSignatureTail block
extentMethodDecl
  "extent" "void" routineSignatureTail block |
  "extent" type routineSignatureTail block
routineSignatureTail
  Identifier "(" [ formalParameters ] ")" { precondition } { postcondition }
formalParameters
  parameterDecl { "," parameterDecl }
parameterDecl
  type Identifier |
  "query" type Identifier
precondition
  "requires" predicate ";" 
postcondition
  "ensures" predicate ";"
invariantDecl
  "invariant" predicate ";" |
  "extent" "invariant" predicate ";"
applicationDecl
  "application" Identifier "{" partDecl } mainActionDecl { partDecl } "}" 
partDecl
  appVarDecl | 
  appQueryDecl | 
  appInvariantDecl
appVarDecl
  type Identifier { "," Identifier } ";"
appQueryDecl
  "let" Identifier "be" predicate ";" |
  "let" "query" type Identifier "be" predicate ";"
actionDecl
  "void" routineSignatureTail block |
  type routineSignatureTail block
appInvariantDecl
  "invariant" predicate ";"
mainActionDecl
  "main" "(" ")" block
localVarDecl
  type Identifier [ "+" predicate ] '{" Identifier [ "+" predicate ] } ";"
localQueryDecl
  "let" Identifier "be" predicate ";" |
  "let" "query" type Identifier "be" predicate ";"
boundedVarDecl
  identifierOrPair "isElementOf" expression |
  Identifier "isItemOf" expression
identifierOrPair
  Identifier |
  "pair" "(" identifierOrPair "," identifierOrPair ")"
type
  referenceType |
  valueType
referenceType
  elementType |
  extentType
elementType
  Identifier |
  Identifier "." ( Identifier | "domain" | "range" ) |
  Any
extentType
  "Extent" "(" Identifier ")"
valueType
  setType |
  pairType |
  bagType |
  itemType
setType
  "Set" "(" coordinateType ")"
pairType
  "Pair" "(" coordinateType "," coordinateType ")"
coordinateType
  referenceType |
  setType |
  pairType
bagType
  "Bag" "(" itemType ")" |
  "Bag" "(" bagType ")"
itemType
  moldType |
null
A Appendix

```
"Set" "(" expression { "," expression } ")" |
"Pair" "(" expression "," expression ")" |
postfixExpr |
  literal
postfixExprTail
  Identifier |
  "extent" |
  "range" |
  Identifier arguments |
  "cast" "(" type ")" |
  "average" "(" [ Identifier ":" expression ] ")" |
  "maximum" "(" [ Identifier ":" expression ] ")" |
  "minimum" "(" [ Identifier ":" expression ] ")" |
  "sum" "(" [ Identifier ":" expression ] ")" |
  "map" "(" Identifier ":" expression ")" |
  "select" "(" Identifier ":" predicate ")" |
  "aggregate" "(" Identifier "," Identifier "=" predicate ":" predicate ")" |
  "inverse" "(" ")" |
  "transitiveClosure" "(" ")" |
  "isEmpty" "(" ")" |
  "isSymmetric" "(" ")" |
  "isAsymmetric" "(" ")" |
  "isAntisymmetric" "(" ")" |
  "isReflexive" "(" ")" |
  "isIrreflexive" "(" ")" |
  "isTransitive" "(" ")" |
  "isIdentity" "(" ")" |
  "isTotalRelation" "(" ")" |
  "isSurjectiveRelation" "(" ")" |
  "isPartialFunction" "(" ")" |
  "isTotalFunction" "(" ")" |
  "isPartialInjection" "(" ")" |
  "isTotalInjection" "(" ")" |
  "isPartialSurjection" "(" ")" |
  "isTotalSurjection" "(" ")" |
  "isPartialBijection" "(" ")" |
  "isTotalBijection" "(" ")" |
```
\text{literal} \rightarrow \text{BooleanLiteral} \mid \text{StringLiteral} \mid \text{DecimalLiteral} \mid \text{FloatingPointLiteral} \mid \text{NullLiteral}


[37] Erich Gamma, Richard Helm, Ralph Johnson, and John Vlissides. *Design Patterns: Elements of Reusable Object-Oriented Software*. Addison-Wesley, 1995.


[54] Chris Allan, Pavel Avgustinov, Aske Simon Christensen, Laurie Hendren, Sascha Kuzins, Ondřej Lhoták, Oege de Moor, Damien Sereni, Ganesh Sittampalam, and Julian Tibble. Adding trace matching with free variables to AspectJ. In 20th Annual ACM

[56] Atsushi Igarashi, Benjamin C. Pierce, and Philip Wadler. Featherweight Java: A minimal core calculus for Java and GJ. ACM Transactions on Programming Languages and Systems (TOPLAS), 23(3):396–450, 2001.


[58] Henry G. Baker. Equal rights for functional objects or, the more things change, the more they are the same. ACM SIGPLAN OOPS Messenger, 4(4):2–27, 1993.


